GeminiDB

Mongo

 Issue
 24

 Date
 2024-07-30





Copyright © Huawei Cloud Computing Technologies Co., Ltd. 2024. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written consent of Huawei Cloud Computing Technologies Co., Ltd.

Trademarks and Permissions

NUAWEI and other Huawei trademarks are the property of Huawei Technologies Co., Ltd. All other trademarks and trade names mentioned in this document are the property of their respective holders.

Notice

The purchased products, services and features are stipulated by the contract made between Huawei Cloud and the customer. All or part of the products, services and features described in this document may not be within the purchase scope or the usage scope. Unless otherwise specified in the contract, all statements, information, and recommendations in this document are provided "AS IS" without warranties, guarantees or representations of any kind, either express or implied.

The information in this document is subject to change without notice. Every effort has been made in the preparation of this document to ensure accuracy of the contents, but all statements, information, and recommendations in this document do not constitute a warranty of any kind, express or implied.

Contents

1 Service Overview	. 1
1.1 What Is a GeminiDB Mongo API?	1
1.2 Compatible APIs and Versions	2
1.3 Instance Specifications	2
1.4 DB Instance Statuses	3
1.5 Usage Specifications	4
1.5.1 Naming Rules	4
1.5.2 Indexing Rules	4
1.5.3 Database Connection	5
1.5.4 Reliability	5
1.5.5 Database Performance	6
1.5.6 Cursor Usage Rules	8
2 Billing	. 9
2.1 Billing Overview	9
2.2 Billing Modes	.10
2.2.1 Overview	.10
2.2.2 Yearly/Monthly Billing	.11
2.2.3 Pay-per-Use Billing	.16
2.3 Billing Items	20
2.4 Billing Examples	22
2.5 Billing Mode Changes	.25
2.5.1 Overview	.25
2.5.2 Pay-per-Use to Yearly/Monthly	.26
2.5.3 Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use	.28
2.6 Renewing Subscriptions	30
2.6.1 Overview	.30
2.6.2 Manually Renewing an Instance	31
2.6.3 Auto-renewing an Instance	.34
2.7 Bills	.37
2.8 Arrears	41
2.9 Billing Termination	42
2.10 Cost Management	44
2.10.1 Cost Composition	44

2.10.2 Cost Allocation	
2.10.3 Cost Analysis	45
2.10.4 Cost Optimization	
2.11 Billing FAQs	
2.11.1 What Are the Differences Between Yearly/Monthly and Pay-per-Use Billing?	
2.11.2 Can I Switch Between Yearly/Monthly and Pay-per-Use Billing?	47
3 Getting Started with GeminiDB Mongo API	
3.1 Service Overview	
3.2 Buying a Replica Set Instance	49
3.3 Connecting to a Replica Set Instance	
3.3.1 Connection Methods	56
3.3.2 Connecting to a Replica Set Instance over a Private Network	57
3.3.3 Connecting to a Replica Set Instance over a Public Network	64
3.3.3.1 Connecting to a Replica Set Instance Using Robo 3T	
3.3.3.2 Connecting to a Replica Set Instance Using the MongoDB Client	
3.4 Getting Started with Common Practices	
4 Working with GeminiDB Mongo API	79
4.1 Permissions Management	
4.1.1 Creating a User Group and Assigning Permissions	
4.1.2 Creating a Custom Policy	80
4.2 Migrating Data	
4.2.1 Migration Scheme Overview	
4.2.2 Migrating Data Using DRS	
4.2.3 Migrating Data Using mongoexport and mongoimport	
4.2.4 Migrating Data Using mongodump and mongorestore	
4.3 Instance Lifecycle	
4.3.1 Restarting an Instance	90
4.3.2 Deleting a Pay-per-Use Instance	91
4.3.3 Recycling an Instance	92
4.4 Instance Modifications	93
4.4.1 Upgrading Patches	93
4.4.2 Modifying the Name of an Instance	95
4.4.3 Resetting the Administrator Password	96
4.4.4 Scaling Up Storage Space	97
4.4.5 Changing Specifications of an Instance	100
4.4.6 Changing a Maintenance Window	103
4.4.7 Adding Nodes	
4.4.8 Deleting Nodes	108
4.4.9 Managing Tags	109
4.4.10 Updating the OS of an Instance	111
4.5 Connections	112
4.5.1 Configuring Security Group Rules	112

4.5.2 Binding and Unbinding an EIP	115
4.5.3 Configuring an SSL Connection	117
4.5.4 Changing a Database Port	
4.5.5 Changing a Security Group	119
4.5.6 Configuring Access Across CIDR Blocks	
4.6 Database Commands	
4.6.1 Supported and Restricted Commands	121
4.7 Data Backup	
4.7.1 Overview	127
4.7.2 Managing Automated Backups	
4.7.3 Managing Manual Backups	
4.8 Data Restoration	
4.8.1 Restoration Methods	135
4.8.2 Restoring Data to a New or Existing Instance	
4.9 Parameter Template Management	
4.9.1 Creating a Parameter Template	
4.9.2 Modifying Parameters of GeminiDB Mongo Instances	140
4.9.3 Viewing Parameter Change History	142
4.9.4 Exporting a Parameter Template	143
4.9.5 Comparing Parameter Templates	144
4.9.6 Replicating a Parameter Template	146
4.9.7 Resetting a Parameter Template	147
4.9.8 Applying a Parameter Template	
4.9.9 Viewing Application Records of a Parameter Template	
4.9.10 Modifying a Parameter Template Description	149
4.9.11 Deleting a Parameter Template	149
4.10 Monitoring and Alarm Configuration	150
4.10.1 GeminiDB Mongo Metrics	150
4.10.2 Configuring Alarm Rules	
4.10.3 Viewing Metrics	
4.10.4 Event Monitoring	
4.10.4.1 Introduction to Event Monitoring	
4.10.4.2 Viewing Event Monitoring Data	
4.10.4.3 Creating an Alarm Rule for Event Monitoring	
4.10.4.4 Events Supported by Event Monitoring	
4.11 Audit	
4.11.1 Key Operations Supported by CTS	
4.11.2 Querying Traces	
4.12 Log Management	
4.12.1 Enabling or Disabling Log Reporting	178
4.12.2 Slow Query Logs	
4.12.3 Error Logs	181

4.13 Billing Management	
4.13.1 Renewing Instances	182
4.13.2 Changing the Billing Mode from Pay-per-Use to Yearly/Monthly	
4.13.3 Changing the Billing Mode from Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use	
4.13.4 Unsubscribing from a Yearly/Monthly DB Instance	
4.14 Quotas	188
5 Best Practices	190
5.1 Buying and Connecting to a GeminiDB Mongo Instance	
5.2 Connecting to an Instance Using Java	197
5.2.1 Driver Package and Environment Dependency	197
5.2.2 Connecting to a Database	199
5.2.3 Accessing a Database	203
5.2.4 Complete Example	
5.3 Connecting to an Instance Using Python	
5.3.1 PyMongo Package	205
5.3.2 Connecting to a Database	205
5.3.3 Accessing a Database	207
5.3.4 Complete Example	
5.4 Connecting to an Instance Using Golang	208
5.4.1 Driver Package	208
5.4.2 Connecting to a Database	209
5.4.3 Accessing a Database	211
5.4.4 Complete Example	211
6 Performance White Paper	213
6.1 Replica Sets	
6.1.1 Test Method	
6.1.2 Test Data	
	218
7 1 Droduct Consulting	210 C
7.1 Product Consulting	
7.1.2 What is the Availability of CominiDB Mongo Instances?	
7.1.2 What is the Availability of Germinob Mongo instances:	
7.2 Fermissions	
7.2.1 How Do'r Create a Read-onty Oser for My Gerninibb Mongo instance:	
7.3 1 What Are the Differences Between Yearly/Monthly and Pay, per use Billing Mode?	
7.3.2 Can I Switch Between Vearly/Monthly and Pay-per-Use Diffing Mode:	
7.5.2 can't Switch between rearry/wonthly and ray-per-ose rayments:	
7.4.1 How Do I Create a GeminiDB Mongo Session?	
7.4.2 Can GeminiDB Mongo API Be Downgraded?	225
7.4.3 Does GeminiDB Mongo API Support Read-Only Databases?	
7.4.4 Does GeminiDB Mongo API Support Oplog Subscription?	·····22J
7.4.4 Does deminible Mongo Art support Optog subscription:	

A Change History	237
7.9 Instance Freezing, Release, Deletion, and Unsubscription	
7.8.3 Can I Change the Region of a GeminiDB Mongo Instance?	
7.8.2 Can Different AZs Communicate with Each Other?	235
7.8.1 What Is AZ and How Can I Select an AZ?	
7.8 Regions and AZs	234
7.7.1 How Long Does a GeminiDB Mongo Instance Store Backup Data For?	
7.7 Backup and Restoration	234
7.6.2 Can I Change the VPC of a GeminiDB Mongo Instance?	234
7.6.1 How Can I Create and Connect to an ECS?	234
7.6 Database Connection	
7.5.2 How Do I Install Robo 3T?	
7.5.1 How Can I Install a MongoDB Client?	
7.5 Client Installation	230
7.4.5 How Do I Troubleshoot High CPU Usage of a GeminiDB Mongo Instance?	225

1 Service Overview

1.1 What Is a GeminiDB Mongo API?

GeminiDB Mongo API is a cloud-native NoSQL high availability database compatible with MongoDB. This flexible, scalable, and reliable database can be managed on a visualized platform.

• Enterprise-class performance

GeminiDB Mongo API gives you 3 times the performance of the open source version. Data can be written to this high availability database 24/7, and with automated load balancing and elastic scaling, you always have all the performance you need.

Flexibility

The distributed architecture, with decoupled compute and storage, means that compute nodes can be expanded in minutes, and storage capacity can be scaled up in seconds without affecting your services.

- Ultimate reliability
 - A multi-layer security system, including VPC, subnet, security group, SSL, and fine-grained permission control, is used to ensure database security and user privacy.
 - You can deploy nodes across three AZs and quickly back up or restore data to improve data reliability.
 - The distributed architecture provides superlative fault tolerance (*N*-1 reliability).
- Friendly UI

On the visualized instance management console, you can create or delete instances in just a few clicks. Backup and restoration, configuring alarms, and adding or removing nodes is just as easy.

Typical Application Scenarios

Gaming

GeminiDB Mongo API is compatible with MongoDB, so you can store game data, such as user equipment and user bonus points in the database. The number of

compute nodes in GeminiDB Mongo instances can be dynamically increased, making it ideal for high-concurrency scenarios of gaming.

Advantages

Flexibility

Generally, you need to flexibly increase compute nodes within 6 hours of game service provisioning to handle performance challenges. GeminiDB Mongo API is well suited for this scenario.

• Fast recovery

GeminiDB Mongo API supports table-level, point-in-time recovery, so you can restore game data quickly.

• Stable expansion

You can scale up capacity without impacting the experience for ongoing games.

1.2 Compatible APIs and Versions

This section describes compatible APIs and versions supported by GeminiDB Mongo API.

Table 1-1 Compatible APIs and versions

Compatible API	Instance Type	Version
MongoDB	Replica set	4.0

1.3 Instance Specifications

Instances of the same type can have different memory specifications. You can select instances of different specifications based on application scenarios.

This section describes the instance specifications supported by GeminiDB Mongo API. The instance specifications depend on the selected CPU model.

GeminiDB Mongo supports replica set instances of different specifications.

Replica Set Instance Specifications

Table 1-2 GeminiDB Mongo	replica set in	stance specifications
--------------------------	----------------	-----------------------

Flavor	vCPUs	Memory (GB)	Min. Storage Space (GB)	Max. Storage Space (GB)	Default Maximu m Connecti ons
geminidb.mongodb.re pset.large.4	2	8	100	600	400

Flavor	vCPUs	Memory (GB)	Min. Storage Space (GB)	Max. Storage Space (GB)	Default Maximu m Connecti ons
geminidb.mongodb.re pset.xlarge.4	4	16	100	1,200	1,000
geminidb.mongodb.re pset.2xlarge.4	8	32	100	2,400	4,000
geminidb.mongodb.re pset.4xlarge.4	16	64	100	4,800	8,000
geminidb.mongodb.re pset.8xlarge.4	32	128	100	9,600	16,000
geminidb.mongodb.re pset.xlarge.8	4	32	100	1,200	1,000
geminidb.mongodb.re pset.2xlarge.8	8	64	100	2,400	4,000
geminidb.mongodb.re pset.4xlarge.8	16	128	100	4,800	8,000
geminidb.mongodb.re pset.8xlarge.8	32	256	100	9,600	16,000

1.4 DB Instance Statuses

The status of a DB instance indicates the health of the instance. You can view the DB instance statuses on the management console.

Table 1	-3 DB	instance	statuses
---------	-------	----------	----------

Status	Description
Available	DB instance is available.
Abnormal	DB instance is faulty.
Creating	DB instance is being created.
Creation failed	DB instance creation fails.
Restarting	DB instance is being restarted.
Resetting password	Administrator password is being reset.
Scaling up	The storage space of the DB instance is being expanded.

Status	Description
Changing instance class	The CPU or memory of a DB instance is being changed.
Uploading backup	The backup file is being uploaded.
Backing up	Backup is being created.
Checking restoration	The backup of the current DB instance is being restored to a new DB instance.
Configuring SSL	SSL is being enabled or disabled.
Changing to yearly/monthly	The billing mode is being changed from pay-per-use to yearly/monthly.
Changing to pay-per-use	The billing mode is being changed from yearly/monthly to pay-per-use.
Frozen	The instance is frozen because your balance drops to or below zero.
Unfreezing	DB instance is unfrozen after the overdue payments are cleared.
Checking changes	The yearly/monthly instance is pending check when its billing mode is changed.

1.5 Usage Specifications

1.5.1 Naming Rules

- It is recommended that the name of a database object (database, table, field, or index) starts with a lowercase letter followed by letters and digits. The length of the name cannot exceed 32 bytes.
- The database name cannot contain special characters ("".\\$/*?~#:?|") and null character (\0). The database name cannot be the system database name, such as admin, local, and config.
- The database collection name can only contain letters and underscores (_). The name cannot be prefixed with "system". The total length of *<Database name*>.*<Collection name*>. cannot exceed 120 characters.

1.5.2 Indexing Rules

- A column index can have up to 512 bytes, an index name can have up to 64 characters, and a composite index can have up to 16 columns.
- The total length of *<Database name*>.*<Collection name*>.\$*<Index name*> cannot exceed 128 characters.
- Use indexes with high selectivity. Indexes with low selectivity will return large number of rows for each key value.

- Write operations on a collection trigger more I/O operations on indexes in the collection. Ensure that the number of indexes in the collection does not exceed 32.
- Do not create indexes that will not be used. Unused indexes loaded to the memory will cause a waste of memory. In addition, useless indexes generated due to changes in service logic must be deleted in a timely manner.
- Indexes must be created in the background instead of foreground.
- An index must be created for the sort key. If a composite index is created, the column sequence of the index must be the same as that of the sort key. Otherwise, the index will not be used.
- Do not create an index based on the leading-edge column of a composite index. If the leading-edge column of a composite index is the column used in another index, the smaller index can be removed. For example, a composite index based on "firstname" and "lastname" can be used for queries on "firstname". In this case, the firstname-based index is unnecessary.
- The time required for creating an index depends on the data volume. You are advised to design the index in advance.
- You can run the **db.currentOp** command and view the index creation progress in the command output (keyword: **createIndexes**).

1.5.3 Database Connection

When the maximum number of mongod connections is reached, your client cannot connect to the GeminiDB Mongo instances. In the mongod service model, each network connection uses a single thread of 1 MB stack space. As the network connections increase, too many threads will increase the context switch overhead and memory usage.

- When your clients use the GeminiDB Mongo driver to connect to databases, a connection pool must be configured. The maximum number of connections in a connection pool cannot exceed 200.
- When your clients use the GeminiDB Mongo driver to connect to databases, calculate the number of clients and the size of the connection pool configured for each client. The total number of connections cannot exceed 80% of the maximum number of connections.
- For a replica set, configure the IP addresses of both the primary and secondary nodes on the client.
- GeminiDB Mongo provides the **rwuser** user by default. The authentication database must be admin when the **rwuser** user is used for login.

1.5.4 Reliability

• Rules for setting write concern:

For mission-critical services, set write concern to $\{w:n\},n>0$. A larger value indicates better consistency but poorer performance.

- w:1 indicates that a confirmation message is returned after data is written to the primary node.
- w:1,journal:true indicates that the result is returned after data is written to the primary node and logs.

- **w:majority** indicates that the result is returned after data is written to more than half of the total nodes.

D NOTE

If data is not written using **w:majority**, the data that is not synchronized to the standby node may be lost when a primary/standby switchover occurs.

• If high reliability is required, deploy a replica set across three AZs.

1.5.5 Database Performance

- Full table scan is not allowed.
- During the query, select only the fields that need to be returned. In this way, the network and thread processing loads are reduced. If you need to modify data, modify only the fields that need to be modified. Do not directly modify the entire object.
- Do not use \$not. GeminiDB Mongo does not index missing data. The \$not query requires that all records be scanned in a single result collection. If \$not is the only query condition, a full table scan will be performed on the collection.
- If you use \$and, put the conditions with the fewest matches before other conditions. If you use \$or, put the conditions with the more matches first.
- In a single instance, the total number of databases cannot exceed 200, and the total number of collections cannot exceed 500. If the number of collections is too large, the memory may be overloaded. In addition, the performance may deteriorate when a device restarts or an active/standby switchover is triggered, which affects the high availability performance in emergencies.
- Before bringing a service online, perform a load test to measure the performance of the database in peak hours.
- Do not execute a large number of concurrent transactions at the same time or leave a transaction uncommitted for a long time.
- Before rolling out services, check the performance of all query types through the execution of query plans.

During the development process, each execution on a collection must be checked using explain() to view its execution plan.

Example:

db.T_DeviceData.find({"deviceId" : "ae4b5769-896f"}).explain(); db.T_DeviceData.find({"deviceId" : "77557c2-31b4"}).explain("executionStats");

A covered query does not have to read a document and returns a result from an index, so using a covered query can greatly improve query efficiency. If the output of explain() shows that **indexOnly** is **true**, the query is covered by an index.

Execution plan parsing:

Check the execution time. The smaller the values of the following parameters, the better the performance:
 executionStats.executionStages.executionTimeMillisEstimate and executionStats.executionStages.inputStage.
 executionTimeMillisEstimate

- executionStats.executionTimeMillis specifies how much time the database took to both select and execute the winning plan.
- **executionStats.executionStages.executionTimeMillisEstimate** indicates the execution completion time of the winning plan.
- executionStats.executionStages.inputStage.
 executionTimeMillisEstimate indicates the execution completion time of the child stage of the winning plan.
- Check the number of scanned records. If the three items are the same, the index is best used.
 - **executionStats. nReturned** indicates the number of documents that match the query condition.
 - executionStats .totalKeysExamined indicates the number of scanned index entries.
 - executionStats .totalDocsExamined indicates the number of scanned document entries.
- Check the stage status (combination of stages with good performance)
 - Fetch+IDHACK
 - Fetch+ixscan
 - Limit+ (Fetch+ixscan)
 - PROJECTION+ixscan

Table 1-4 Status description

Status Name	Description
COLLSCAN	Full Table Scan
SORT	In-memory sorting
IDHACK	_id-based query
ТЕХТ	Full-text index
COUNTSCAN	Number of unused indexes
FETCH	Index scanning
LIMIT	Using Limit to limit the number of returned records
SUBPLA	\$or query stage without using an index
PROJECTION	Number of used indexes
COUNT_SCAN	Number of used indexes

1.5.6 Cursor Usage Rules

By default, the server automatically closes the cursor that has no activity in the past 10 minutes or the one whose associated result sets are all queried. If you do not need a cursor any more, close it immediately to save system resources.

2 Billing

2.1 Billing Overview

In this document, you will learn about how instances are billed, how you can renew subscriptions and manage costs, and what happens if your account goes into arrears.

• Billing Modes

There are yearly/monthly and pay-per-use billing modes. Each one has different advantages and disadvantages.

- Yearly/Monthly: You pay upfront for the amount of time you expect to use the instance for. You will need to make sure you have a top-up account with a sufficient balance or have a valid payment method configured first.
- Pay-per-use: You can start using the GeminiDB instance first and then pay as you go.

For details about the two billing modes, see **Overview**.

You can also change the billing mode later if it no longer meets your needs. For details, see **Overview**.

• Billing Items

You will be billed for instance specifications, storage space, backup space, and EIP bandwidths. For details about the billing factors and formulas for each billed item, see **Billing Items**.

For more information about billing samples and the billing for each item, see **Billing Examples**.

• Renewing Subscriptions

If you want to continue using an instance after it expires, you need to renew the instance subscription within the specified period. Otherwise, resources, such as compute and storage, will be automatically released, and data may be lost.

You can renew your subscription manually or automatically. For details, see **Overview**.

• Viewing Bills

You can choose **Billing & Costs** > **Bills** to check the instance transactions and bills. For details, see **Bills**.

Arrears

If there is not a sufficient account balance to pay for your bill and there is no other payment method configured, your account will go into arrears. If you want to continue using your cloud services, you will need to top up your account in a timely manner. For details, see **Arrears**.

• Stopping Billing

If you no longer need to use your instance, you can unsubscribe from or delete it to stop the billing. For details, see **Billing Termination**.

• Managing Costs

GeminiDB Mongo costs include resource costs and O&M costs. You can allocate, analyze, and optimize GeminiDB costs to save more money. For details, see **Cost Management**.

2.2 Billing Modes

2.2.1 Overview

There are yearly/monthly and pay-per-use billing modes. Each one has different advantages and disadvantages.

- Yearly/Monthly is a prepaid billing mode. You pay in advance for a subscription term, and in exchange, you get a discounted rate. The longer the subscription term, the bigger the discount. Yearly/Monthly billing is a good option for long-term, stable services.
- Pay-per-use is a postpaid billing mode. You pay as you go and just pay for what you use. The instance usage is calculated by the second but billed every hour. Pay-per-use billing is a good option for scenarios where there are sudden traffic bursts, such as e-commerce promotions.

Table 2-1 lists differences between the two billing modes.

Billing Mode	Yearly/Monthly	Pay-per-use
Payment	Prepaid Billed by the subscription term you purchase	Postpaid Billed for what you use
Billing Method	Billed by the subscription term you purchase	Calculated by the second but billed every hour
Billed Items	Instance specifications (vCPUs and memory), storage space, backup space, and EIPs	Instance specifications (vCPUs and memory), storage space, backup space, and EIPs

 Table 2-1 Differences between billing modes

Changing the Billing Mode	Yearly/Monthly can be changed to pay-per-use. The change takes effect only after the yearly/monthly subscription expires. For details, see Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use.	Pay-per-use can be changed to yearly/monthly. For details, see Pay-per-Use to Yearly/Monthly .
Changing the Specificati ons	Supported	Supported
Applicatio n Scenarios	Recommended for resources expected to be in use long term. A cost-effective option for scenarios where the resource usage duration is predictable.	Recommended when the resource demands are likely to fluctuate and you want more flexibility.

2.2.2 Yearly/Monthly Billing

If you expect to use resources for a longer period, you can save money by selecting yearly/monthly billing. This section describes billing rules for yearly/ monthly GeminiDB Mongo resources.

Application Scenarios

If you want to ensure resource stability over a certain period of time, yearly/ monthly billing is a good choice for the following types of workloads:

- Long-term workloads with stable resource requirements, such as official websites, online malls, and blogs.
- Long-term projects, such as scientific research projects and large-scale events.
- Workloads with predictable traffic bursts, for example, e-commerce promotions or festivals.
- Workloads with high data security requirements.

Billed Items

You are billed for the following items on a yearly/monthly basis.

Billed Item	Description
Instance specificatio ns	Instance specifications, including vCPUs and memory.

 Table 2-2 Items billed on a yearly/monthly basis

Billed Item	Description
Storage space	If the actual storage usage exceeds your purchased storage, you will be billed for additional storage on a pay-per-use basis.
Backup space	GeminiDB Mongo provides backup storage up to 100% of the database storage you purchase at no additional charge.
	After the free backup space is used up, charges are applied based on the backup space pricing details. Pricing is listed on a per-hour basis, but bills are calculated based on the actual usage duration.
(Optional) Public network bandwidth	GeminiDB Mongo instances are accessible from public networks, and you are billed for the generated public network traffic, but not for private network traffic.

If you want to purchase a 3-node (specifications of each node: 4 vCPUs | 16 GB) GeminiDB Mongo instance with 12 GB of storage space. At the bottom of the instance buying page, price details (excluding the backup space fee) will be displayed.

Figure 2-1 Example price

Required Duration	1	2	3
Quantity	- 1	+ (?
	Auto-rene	w Deduc	tion rule and

Price \$547.20 USD ⑦

The price includes:

- Selected specifications for your instance
- Storage space

NOTE

The backup space fee is not included. For details about the backup price, see **Product Pricing Details**.

Backup Storage Space		
DB Instance Type	Hourly	Currency
Cluster	0.00004	Price per GB

Billed Usage Period

A yearly/monthly instance is billed for the purchased duration (UTC+8). The billing starts when you activated or renewed the subscription, and ends at 23:59:59 of the expiry date.

For example, if you purchased a one-month GeminiDB Mongo instance on March 08, 2023, 15:50:04, the billed usage period is from March 08, 2023, 15:50:04 to April 08, 2023, 23:59:59.

Billing Examples

Suppose you purchased a one-month GeminiDB Mongo instance (instance specifications: 4 vCPUs | 16 GB; nodes: 3; storage: 100 GB; backup space: 110 GB (100 GB for free)) on March 08, 2023, 15:50:04, and renewed the subscription for one more month before the initial subscription expired. That would include two usage periods:

- March 08, 2023, 15:50:04 to April 08, 2023, 23:59:59
- April 08, 2023, 23:59:59 to May 08, 2023, 23:59:59
 - From April 08, 2023, 23:59:59 to May 01, 2023, 23:59:59, 50 GB of free backup space was used.
 - From May 01, 2023, 23:59:59 to May 08, 2023, 23:59:59, another 10 GB of backup space was used, which was billed for 168 hours.

You will be billed for both usage periods. GeminiDB Mongo resources are billed individually as follows.

Resource	Formula	Unit Price
Instance specifications (including vCPUs and memory)	Unit price of the instance specifications x Required duration x Number of nodes	For details about the unit price, see Cluster CPU/Memory on Product Pricing Details .
Storage space	Storage space unit price x Required duration x Storage space (GB)	For details about the unit price, see Storage Space on Product Pricing Details .

	Table 2-3	Formulas	for I	billina	vearlv	/monthlv	/ resources
--	-----------	----------	-------	---------	--------	----------	-------------

Resource	Formula	Unit Price
Backup space	Backup space unit price x Required duration x (Backup space – Storage space) (GB)	For details about the unit price, see Backup Storage Space on Product Pricing Details .
	NOTE The billed duration refers to the length of time the billed backup space was used for.	
Public network bandwidth	Billed by fixed bandwidth	For details, see Product Pricing Details .

Figure 2-2 shows how the total price is calculated.

NOTICE

Prices in the figure are just examples. Actual prices are subject to **Product Pricing Details**.

Figure 2-2 Total price for a yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance



Price Change After Specification Change

If the specifications of a yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance no longer meet your needs, you can change the specifications on the console. The system will recalculate the price and either bill or refund you the difference.

- If you upgrade your GeminiDB Mongo instance specifications, you need to pay the difference in price.
- If you downgrade your GeminiDB Mongo instance specifications, Huawei Cloud will refund you the difference.

You are not advised to downgrade your GeminiDB Mongo instance to a lower specification because the instance performance may be affected. Suppose you

purchased a yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance (4 vCPUs | 16 GB and 3 nodes) on April 08, 2023 and upgraded the instance specifications to 8 vCPUs | 32 GB and 3 nodes on April 18, 2023. The price for the original specifications was \$547.20 USD/month, and that for the new specifications was \$1,027.20 USD/ month. The price difference will be calculated as follows:

Price difference for the specification upgrade = Price for the new specifications × Remaining period - Price for the original specifications × Remaining period

The remaining period in the formula is the remaining days of each calendar month divided by the maximum number of days in each calendar month. In this example, Remaining period = 12 (Remaining days in April)/30 (Maximum number of days in April) + 8 (Remaining days in May)/31 (Maximum number of days in May) = 0.6581. Cost of upgrade = 1,027.20 USD × 0.6581 – 547.20 USD × 0.6581 = 315.89 USD.

For more details, see **Pricing of a Changed Specification**.

Impact of Expiration

Figure 2-3 shows the statuses a yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance can go through throughout its lifecycle. After a GeminiDB Mongo instance is purchased, it enters the valid period and runs normally during this period. If the instance is not renewed after it expires, before being deleted, it first enters a grace period and then a retention period.



Figure 2-3 Lifecycle of a yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance

Expiration Reminder

The system will send you a reminder (by email, SMS, or in-app message) 7 days before a yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance expires to remind you to renew the subscription.

Impact of Expiration

If your yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance is not renewed after it expires, it changes to the **Expired** state and enters a grace period. During the grace period, you can access the GeminiDB Mongo instance but cannot:

- Change instance specifications.
- Change the billing mode from yearly/monthly to pay-per-use.
- Unsubscribe from it.

If the yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance is not renewed after the grace period ends, its status turns to **Frozen** and it enters a retention period. You cannot

perform any operations on the GeminiDB Mongo instance while it is in the retention period.

If the yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance is not renewed by the time the retention period ends, it will be released and data cannot be restored.

NOTE

• For details about renewals, see **Overview**.

2.2.3 Pay-per-Use Billing

Pay-per-use billing means you pay nothing up front and are not tied into any contract or commitment. This section describes billing rules for pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instances.

Application Scenarios

Pay-per-use billing is good for short-term, bursty, or unpredictable workloads that cannot tolerate any interruptions, such as applications for e-commerce flash sales, temporary testing, and scientific computing.

Billing Items

You are billed for the following items on a pay-per-use basis.

Billing Item	Description
Instance specificatio ns	Instance specifications, including vCPUs and memory.
Storage space	Instance storage space, which is billed hourly on a pay-per-use basis.
Backup space	GeminiDB Mongo provides backup storage up to 100% of the database storage you purchase at no additional charge. After the free backup space is used up, charges are applied based on the backup space pricing details. Pricing is listed on a per-hour basis, but bills are calculated based on the actual usage duration.
(Optional) Public network bandwidth	GeminiDB Mongo instances are accessible from public networks, and you are billed for the generated public network traffic, but not for private network traffic.

 Table 2-4 Items billed on a pay-per-use basis

If you want to purchase a 3-node (specifications of each node: 4 vCPUs | 16 GB) GeminiDB Mongo instance with 100 GB of storage space. At the bottom of the instance buying page, price details (excluding the backup space fee) will be displayed.

Figure 2-4 Example price

```
Price $1.14 USD/hour ⑦
```

The price includes:

- Instance specifications (including vCPUs and memory)
- Selected storage space

NOTE

The backup space fee is not included. For details about the backup price, see **Product Pricing Details**.

Backup Storage Space		
DB Instance Type	Hourly	Currency
Cluster	0.00004	Price per GB

Billed Usage Period

Pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance usage is calculated by the second and billed every hour. The billing starts when ECS instance is created and ends when the instance is deleted.

NOTE

It takes a certain time to create an instance. The billing starts from the time when the instance is successfully created. You can view the two time points on the **Basic Information** page. You can view the time when the instance is created beside the **Created** field.

For example, if you purchased a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance at 8:45:30 and deleted it at 8:55:30, you are billed for the 600 seconds from 8:45:30 to 8:55:30.

Billing Examples

Suppose you purchased a pay-per-use instance on April 18, 2023, 9:59:30, and deleted it on April 18, 2023, 10:45:46. Two usage periods will be billed:

- Usage of 30 seconds from 9:59:30 to 10:00:00
- Usage of 2,746 seconds from 10:00:00 to 10:45:46
 - The free backup space is used from 10:00:00 to 10:45:00.
 - Ten GB of billing backup space is used from 10:45:00 to 10:45:46 and the billed duration is 46 seconds.

The price displayed in the pricing details is per hour, so you need to divide it by 3,600 to obtain the price for each second and then multiply the per-second price by the total number of seconds. GeminiDB Mongo instances are billed individually as follows.

es
e

Resource	Formula	Unit Price
Compute resources (including vCPUs and nodes)	Unit price of instance specifications x Required duration	For details about the unit price, see Cluster CPU/Memory on Product Pricing Details
Storage space	Storage space unit price x Purchase duration	For details about the unit price, see Storage Space on Product Pricing Details .
Backup space	Backup space unit price x Required duration x (Backup space – Storage space) (GB) NOTE The billed duration refers to the length of time the billed backup space was used for.	For details about the unit price, see Backup Storage Space on Product Pricing Details .
Public network traffic	 Tiered billing by fixed bandwidth 0 Mbit/s to 5 Mbit/s (included): billed at a fixed unit price per Mbit/s Greater than 5 Mbit/s: billed at a different price per Mbit/s 	For details, see Bandwidth Price on Product Pricing Details page or Product Pricing Details .

Figure 2-5 shows how the total price is calculated.

NOTICE

Prices in the figure are just examples. Actual prices are subject to **Product Pricing Details**.

For pay-per-use billing, decimal numerals on the price calculator are rounded off and are accurate to two decimal places. If the fee is less than \$0.01 USD (after rounding off), \$0.01 USD will be displayed.



Figure 2-5 Total price for a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance

Price Change After Specification Change

If you change the specifications of a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance, the original order will become invalid and a new order will be placed. You will be billed based on the new specifications.

If you change instance specifications within a given hour, multiple records will be generated. Different records record the billing for different specifications.

For example, if you purchased a pay-per-use instance (4 vCPUs | 16 GB) at 9:00:00 and changed the instance specifications to 8 vCPUs | 32 GB at 9:30:00, the following items will be billed:

- Specifications 4 vCPUs | 16 GB usage from 9:00:00 to 9:30:00
- Specifications 8 vCPUs | 32 GB usage from 9:30:00 to 10:00:00

Impacts of Arrears

Figure 2-6 shows the statuses a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance can go through throughout its lifecycle. After a GeminiDB Mongo instance is purchased, it enters the valid period and runs normally during this period. If your account goes into arrears, the instance enters a grace period and then a retention period.





Arrears Reminder

The system will bill you for pay-per-use resources after each billing cycle ends. If your account goes into arrears, we will notify you by email, SMS, or internal message.

Impacts of Arrears

When your account is in arrears due to automatic fee deduction for pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instances, the account status turns to arrears. In arrears, the pay-per-use instance continues rendering service but the instance enters the grace period. You are still responsible for expenditures generated during the grace period. You can view the charges on the **Billing Center** > **Overview** page and pay any past due balance as needed.

If you do not bring your account balance current before the grace period expires, the GeminiDB Mongo instance status turns to **Frozen** and it enters a retention period. You cannot perform any operations on a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance in the **Frozen** status.

If you do not bring your account balance current before the retention period ends, your instance will be released, and data cannot be restored.

NOTE

- During the retention period, you cannot access or use your instance but the data stored in it can be retained. The retention period for Huawei Cloud International website is 15 days.
- During the grace period, you can access and use only some resources of your instance. The grace period for Huawei Cloud International website is 15 days.
- For details about top-up, see **Topping Up an Account**.

2.3 Billing Items

Billing

You will be billed for instance specifications, storage space, backup space, and public network traffic. For details, see **Table 2-6**.

NOTE

The billed items marked with asterisks (*) are mandatory.

Billing Item	Description	Billing Mode	Formula
* Specific ations	Billed by instance specifications, including vCPUs and memory. Computing and storage capabilities vary by the number of vCPUs and memory size.	Yearly/ Monthly and pay- per-use	Unit price x Required duration For details about the unit price, see Cluster CPU/Memory on Product Pricing Details.

Table 2-6 Billing items of a GeminiDB Mongo instance

Billing Item	Description	Billing Mode	Formula
* Storage space	Billed based on unified standards.	Yearly/ Monthly and pay- per-use	Unit price x Storage space x Required duration For details about the unit price, see Storage Space on Product Pricing Details.
Backup space	Billed based on unified standards.	Pay-per- use	Unit price x Billed backup space x Required duration For details about the unit price, see Backup Storage Space on Product Pricing Details. NOTE The billed duration refers to the length of time the billed backup space was used for.
Public network traffic	 An EIP is required if a GeminiDB Mongo instance needs to access the Internet. Billed by bandwidth, traffic, and the EIP reservation price. EIP for a yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance: billed by bandwidth. EIP for a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance: billed by bandwidth, traffic, or shared bandwidth, traffic, or shared bandwidth. You are also charged for IP reservation if you do not bind the EIP to any instance. 	Yearly/ Monthly and pay- per-use You can purchase a bandwidt h add-on package or a shared traffic package.	 Tiered pricing based on fixed bandwidth. 0 Mbit/s to 5 Mbit/s (included): billed at a fixed unit price per Mbit/s. Greater than 5 Mbit/s: billed at a different price per Mbit/s. For details about the unit price, see Bandwidth Price on Product Pricing Details or Product Pricing Details.

Billing Examples

Suppose you purchased a one-month GeminiDB Mongo instance (instance specifications: 4 vCPUs | 16 GB; nodes: 3; storage: 100 GB; backup space: 110 GB (100 GB for free)) on March 08, 2023, 15:50:04, and renewed the subscription for one more month before the initial subscription expired. That would include two usage periods:

- March 08, 2023, 15:50:04 to April 08, 2023, 23:59:59
- April 08, 2023, 23:59:59 to May 08, 2023, 23:59:59
 - From April 08, 2023, 23:59:59 to May 01, 2023, 23:59:59, 50 GB of free backup space was used.
 - From May 01, 2023, 23:59:59 to May 08, 2023, 23:59:59, another 10 GB of backup space was used, which was billed for 168 hours.

Figure 2-7 shows how the total price is calculated.

NOTICE

Prices in the figure are only for reference. For details, see Product Pricing Details.





For more billing examples of a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance, see **Billing Examples**.

2.4 Billing Examples

Billing Scenario

A user purchased a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance at 15:30:00 on March 18, 2023. The instance configuration is as follows:

- Specifications: 4 vCPUs | 16 GB
- Nodes: 3
- Public network bandwidth: 6 Mbit/s

After a period of time, the user found that the current GeminiDB Influx instance specifications no longer met service requirements and updated the specifications to 8 vCPUs | 32 GB at 09:00:00 on March 20, 2023. Since the user wanted to use the instance long term, the user then changed the instance to yearly/monthly billing with a one-month duration at 10:30:00 on the same day. So how much will the user be billed for this GeminiDB Influx instance in March and April?

Billing Analysis

The total price of this GeminiDB Mongo instance involves both pay-per-use and yearly/monthly usage:

- Pay-per-use usage: March 18, 2023, 15:30:00 to March 20, 2023, 10:30:00
 - March 18, 2023, 15:30:00 to March 20, 2023, 9:00:00
 - Instance specifications: 4 vCPUs | 16 GB
 - Nodes: 3
 - Used storage space: 100 GB
 - Used backup space: 100 GB
 - Public network bandwidth: 6 Mbit/s
 - March 20, 2023, 9:00:00 to March 20, 2023, 10:30:00
 - Instance specifications: 8 vCPUs | 32 GB
 - Nodes: 3
 - Used storage space: 200 GB
 - Used backup space: 210 GB (billed on a pay-per-use basis from March 20, 2023, 10:00:00 to March 20, 2023, 10:30:00)
 - Public network bandwidth: 6 Mbit/s
- Yearly/Monthly: March 20, 2023, 10:30:00 to April 20, 2023, 23:59:59
 - Instance specifications: 8 vCPUs | 32 GB
 - Nodes: 3
 - Used storage space: 200 GB
 - Used backup space: 300 GB (billed on a pay-per-use basis from April 10, 2023, 23:59:59 to April 20, 2023, 23:59:59)
 - Public network bandwidth: 6 Mbit/s
 - Billed duration: one month

NOTICE

Unit prices in this example are used for reference only. The prices shown here are only estimates. As unit prices change from time to time, the prices shown here will differ from actual prices. For details, see the data released on the Huawei Cloud official website.

Pay-per-use

From March 18, 2023, 15:30:00 to March 20, 2023, 09:00:00, a GeminiDB Mongo instance with specifications 4 vCPUs | 16 GB was used for 41.5 hours, so the price would be calculated as follows.



From March 20, 2023, 09:00:00 to March 20, 2023, 10:30:00, a GeminiDB Mongo instance with specifications 8 vCPUs | 32 GB was used for 1.5 hours, so the price would be calculated as follows.



Yearly/Monthly

From March 20, 2023, 10:30:00 to April 20, 2023, 23:59:59, a GeminiDB Mongo instance purchased using yearly/monthly billing was used for one month, so the price would be calculated as follows.



From March to April, the total price of this GeminiDB Mongo instance is \$1,190.18 USD (50.76 + 3.56 + 1135.86).

2.5 Billing Mode Changes

2.5.1 Overview

After purchasing a GeminiDB Mongo instance, you can change the billing mode if it no longer meets your needs. **Table 2-7** lists changeable billing items of the GeminiDB Mongo instance.

Billing Item	Change Description	Reference
Instance specification s (vCPUs and nodes)	 Changing the billing mode of a GeminiDB Mongo instance includes the changes to compute resources (vCPUs and nodes). Change from pay-per-use to 	 Pay-per-Use to Yearly/Monthly Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use
	yearly/monthly to enjoy lower prices.	
	 Change from yearly/monthly to pay-per-use to use the GeminiDB Mongo instance more flexibly. 	
	NOTE Such a change takes effect only after the yearly/monthly subscription ends.	
EIP	 A yearly/monthly EIP can be changed to a pay-per-use EIP billed by bandwidth after the yearly/monthly subscription ends. A pay-per-use EIP billed by 	 Pay-per-Use to Yearly/Monthly Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use
	bandwidth can be changed to a yearly/monthly EIP.	
	• Pay-per-use EIPs billed by bandwidth can be changed to pay- per-use EIPs billed by traffic, and pay-per-use EIPs billed by traffic can be changed to pay-per-use EIPs billed by bandwidth.	
	For details, see Figure 2-8 .	

Table 2-7 Changeable billing items of GeminiDB Mongo instances

Figure 2-8 EIP billing mode change



1: The change takes effect immediately.

2: The change takes effect only after the yearly/monthly subscription period expires.

×: The billing mode cannot be changed.

2.5.2 Pay-per-Use to Yearly/Monthly

If you have a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance that you expect to use for a long time, you can change it to yearly/monthly billing to reduce costs. Doing so will create an order. After you pay for the order, yearly/monthly billing will be applied immediately.

Suppose you bought a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance at 15:29:16 on April 18, 2023 and changed it to yearly/monthly billing at 16:30:30 on the same day. After you paid for the order, yearly/monthly billing was applied immediately. On the **Billing Center** > **Billing** page, three line items were generated.

- Pay-per-use expenditures for 15:29:16 to 16:00:00 on April 18, 2023
- Pay-per-use expenditures for 16:00:00 to 16:30:30 on April 18, 2023
- Yearly//monthly expenditure generated on April 18, 2023, 16:30:30

Constraints

Resources such as EIPs that are used by an instance may not support the change with this instance. For details about their billing mode change rules and handling methods, see **Table 2-8**.

Resourc e	Billing Mode	Billed By	Band width Type	Change to Yearly/ Monthly Billing with GeminiDB Mongo Instance	Handling Measure
EIP	Pay- per-use	Bandwid th	Dedica ted	Supported	Change the EIP to yearly/ monthly billing on the EIP console. For details, see Changing EIP Billing Mode .
EIP	Pay- per-use	Traffic	Dedica ted	Not supported	An EIP that is billed by traffic on a pay-per-use basis cannot be directly changed to be billed on a yearly/monthly basis. To change this: 1. Change the EIP to be
					billed by bandwidth on a pay-per-use basis.2. Change the EIP to be billed on a yearly/
					monthly basis. For details, see Changing EIP Billing Mode .

Table 2-8 EIP billing mode change rules

Prerequisites

- The billing mode of the instance is pay-per-use.
- The instance status is **Available**.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose billing mode you want to change and click **Change to Yearly/Monthly** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 2-9 Changing pay-per-use to yearly/monthly

Alternatively, click the instance name to go to the **Basic Information** page. In the **Billing Information** area, click **Change to Yearly/Monthly** in the **Billing Mode** field.

Figure 2-10 Changing from pay-per-use to yearly/monthly

Billing Information

Billing Mode	Pay-per-use	Change to Yearly/Monthly
Created	Jul 01, 2024 1	16:48:24 GMT+08:00

D NOTE

The billing mode of multiple instances can be changed in batches. Perform the following steps:

- 1. Select the instances whose billing mode you want to change.
- 2. Click **Change to Yearly/Monthly** above the instance list.
- **Step 4** On the displayed page, specify a subscription duration in month. The minimum duration is one month.

If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Pay** to go to the payment page.

- **Step 5** Select a payment method and click **Confirm**.
- Step 6 View results on the Instances page.

In the upper right corner of the instance list, click C to refresh the list. The instance status will become **Available** after the change is successful. The billing mode changes to **Yearly/Monthly**.

----End

2.5.3 Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use

After creating a yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance, you can change it to pay-per-use for more flexibility, and you can recoup part of what you paid for the subscription.

Suppose you bought a yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance at 15:29:16 on April 18, 2023 and changed it to pay-per-use billing at 16:30:00 on May 18, 2023. On the **Billing Center > Billing** page, bills information is generated as follows:

- Yearly/Monthly expenditures for 15:29:16 on April 18 to 23:59:59 on May 18, 2023
- Pay-per-use expenditures for 23:59:59 on May 18, 2023 to the end time of pay-per-use billing. A bill was generated every hour.

NOTE

The pay-per-use billing mode will take effect only after the yearly/monthly subscription has expired. Auto-renewal will not be in effect.

Constraints

Resources such as EIPs that are used by an instance may not support the change with this instance. For details about their billing mode change rules and handling methods, see **Table 2-9**.

Resour ce	Billing Mode	Billed By	Bandwi dth Type	Change to Pay-per-Use Billing with GeminiDB Mongo Instance	Handling Measure
EIP	Yearly/ Monthl y	Bandwi dth	Dedicat ed	Not supported	Change the EIP to yearly/monthly billing on the EIP console. For details, see Changing EIP Billing
EIP	Yearly/ Monthl y	Traffic	Dedicat ed	Not supported	An EIP billed on a yearly/monthly basis cannot be directly changed to be billed by traffic on a pay-per-use basis. To change this: 1. Change the EIP to be billed by bandwidth on a pay- per-use basis. 2. Change the EIP to be billed by traffic on a pay-per-use basis. For details, see Changing EIP Billing Mode.

Table 2-9 EIP billing mode change rules

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose billing mode you want to change and click **More** > **Change to Pay-per-Use** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 2-11 Changing from yearly/monthly to pay-per-use

□ Name/ID ⊕	DB Instance	Compatible	Stor	Status 🖯	Specifications	Storage Space	:e	Load balan	Enterprise	Billing Mode	Operation
	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0		Available		0%	0/100GB	-	default	Yearly/Monthly	Renew Change to Pay-per-Use More ~

The billing mode of multiple pay-per-use instances can be changed in batches. Perform the following steps:

- 1. Select the instances whose billing mode you want to change.
- 2. Click More > Change to Pay-per-Use in the Operation column
- **Step 4** On the displayed page, confirm the instance information and click **Change to Payper-Use**. The billing mode will change to pay-per-use after the instance expires. Auto renewal will be disabled after the billing mode of your instances change to pay-per-use. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- Step 5 After you submit the change, check whether a message is displayed in the Billing Mode column, indicating that the billing mode will be changed to pay-per-use after the subscription expires.
- Step 6 To cancel the change, choose Billing > Renewal to enter the Billing Center. On the Renewals page, locate the instance and click More > Cancel Change to Payper-Use.
- Step 7 In the displayed dialog box, click Yes.

----End

2.6 Renewing Subscriptions

2.6.1 Overview

When to Renew Subscriptions

If a yearly/monthly instance is about to expire but you want to continue using it, you need to renew the instance subscription within a specified period, or resources, such as vCPUs and memory, will be automatically released, and data will be lost and cannot be restored.

Only yearly/monthly instance subscriptions can be renewed. If you use pay-per-use instances, just ensure that your account has a valid payment method configured or a top-up account with a sufficient balance.

If you renew the instance before it expires, resources will be retained and you can continue using the instance. For details about statuses after instances have expired and the associated impacts, see **Impact of Expiration**.

How to Renew Subscriptions

You can renew a yearly/monthly instance manually or automatically.

Method	Description
Manually Renewing an Instance	You can renew a yearly/monthly instance anytime on the console before it is automatically deleted.
Auto-renewing an Instance	You can enable auto-renewal to automatically renew the instance before it expires. This prevents resources from being deleted in case you forget to renew a subscription.

Table 2-10 Renewing	a	yearly/i	monthly	instance
---------------------	---	----------	---------	----------

You can select a method to renew a yearly/monthly instance based on the phase the instance is currently in.





2.6.2 Manually Renewing an Instance

You can renew a yearly/monthly instance anytime on the console before it is automatically deleted.

Renewing an Instance on the Console

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance that you want to renew and click **Renew** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 2-13 Renewal button

NameID 🕀	DB Instance	Compatible	Stor	Status 🖯	Specifications	Storage Spa	ICe	Load balan	Enterprise	Billing Mode	Operation
	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0		Available		0%	0/100GB	-	default	Yearly/Monthly	Renew Change to Pay-per-Use More ~

Alternatively, click the instance name to go to the **Basic Information** page. In the **Billing Information** area, click **Renew** next to the **Billing Mode** field.

Figure 2-14 Renewal button

Billing Information	
Billing Mode	Yearly/Monthly Renew
Order	
Created	Jul 01, 2024 17:33:26 GMT+08:00

NOTE

To renew multiple yearly/monthly instances at a time, perform the following steps:

- 1. Select the yearly/monthly instances to be renewed.
- 2. Click **Renew** above the instance list.
- **Step 4** On the displayed page, renew the instances.

----End

Renewing a Subscription in Billing Center

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** Hover over **Billing & Costs** in the upper part of the console and choose **Renewal** from the drop-down list.

The **Renewals** page is displayed.

Step 3 Select the search criteria.

On the **Manual Renewals**, **Auto Renewals**, **Pay-per-Use After Expiration**, and **Renewals Canceled** pages, you can view the instances to be renewed.

Figure 2-15 Renewal management

unsole		Billing & Costs Resources Enterprise	Developer Tools ICP Lice	nse Support Service	Tickets English	
Renewals	Unpaid Orders	1 🗊 Feedback 🖗 Quick Lin	nks Renew Domain	Set Renewal Date	Modify Message Recipient	Set Deduction Date for Auto-Re
1. If you want to continue using any resources about to expire, refer to How Do I Renew F 2. Renewals or changes to pay-per-use will be applied after the current subscription term 3. If you want to beam with hepsen after a realowice expire, refer to Mark Ar a Groce F 4. If you want to renew your subscriptions more easily, refer to Automatically Renewing a	My Packages Bills Invoices	ling Mode from Yearly/Mon	thly to Pay-per-Use?			
() Instances expiring soon: 0 ; Instances to be frozen: 0 ; Instances to be released: 7 . Pleased: 7	Cost Center					
Express Express addays Express 15 days Express 7 days Express Process	vozen Custom	Name/ID/Order Number Do not show resources that have orders per	resource name, resource ID, ending payment	or orde Q		
Manual Renewals (9) Auto Renewals (0) Pay-per-Use After Expiration	on (0) Renev	vals Canceled (0)				
Batch Renew Enable Auto-Renew Change to Pay-per-Use After Expirate	on Cancel R	enewal Batch Export				Export Renewal Prices
Instance Name/ID Product Type/Specifications	Region	Provisioned/Expires	s	tatus	Validity Period	Operation
× 🛛		Apr 26, 2023 10:38:08 GN May 26, 2023 23:59:59 GI	MT+08:00 MT+08:00	Frozen	3 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Cancel Renewal More 👻
× 🗆		Apr 26, 2023 09:55:03 GN May 26, 2023 23:59:59 GI	4T+08:00 MT+08:00	Frozen	3 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Renew More +

You can move all resources that need to be manually renewed to the **Manual Renewals** tab page. For details, see **Restoring to Manual Renewal**.

Step 4 Manually renew resources.

• Individual renewal: Locate an instance that you want to renew and click **Renew** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 2-16 Individual renewal

Manual Renewals (9) Auto Renewals (0)) Pay-per-Use After Expiration (0)) Renewals Canceled (0)			
Batch Renew Enable Auto-Renew	Change to Pay-per-Use After Expiration	Cancel Renewal B	atch Export			Export Renewal Prices
Instance Name/ID	Product Type/Specifications	Region	Provisioned/Expires	Status	Validity Period	Operation
~ 🗆			Apr 26, 2023 10:38:08 GMT+08:00 May 26, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Frozen	3 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Cancel Renewal More 👻
~ 🗆			Apr 26, 2023 09:55:03 GMT+08:00 May 26, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Frozen	3 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Renew More -

• Batch renewal: Select multiple instances that you want to renew and click **Batch Renew** in the upper left corner.

Figure 2-17 Batch renewal

Manual Renewals (9) Auto Renewals	(0) Pay-per-Use After Expiration (0) Renewals Cancel	led (0)			
Batch Renew Enable Auto-Renew	Change to Pay-per-Use After Expiration	Cancel Renewal	Batch Export			Export Renewal Prices
Instance Name/ID	Product Type/Specifications	Region	Provisioned/Expires	Status	Validity Period	Operation
~			Apr 26, 2023 10:38:08 GMT+08:00 May 26, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Frozen	3 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Cancel Renewal More 👻
~ 🖸			Apr 26, 2023 09:55:03 GMT+08:00 May 26, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Frozen	3 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Renew More 💌
~			May 16, 2023 15:29:36 GMT+08:00 Jun 16, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Frozen	4 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Renew More 🔻

Step 5 Select a renewal duration and optionally select Renew on the standard renewal date. For details, see Setting the Same Renewal Day for Yearly/Monthly Resources. Confirm the price and click Pay.

Figure 2-18 Confirming renewal

Instance Name/ID	Product Information		Auto-R	enew	Renewal Duration	Renewal Date		Fee
~			⊛ No	10	1 month	Current: May 26, 202 Renewed: Jun 26, 20	13 23: 123 2	
enewal Duration (III) 1 month Lenewal Date Renew o	2 months 3 months 4 n n the standard renewal date, the 1st	nonths 5 months of every month at 23:59:59 C	6 months GMT+08:00 🖉	7 months	8 months 9	months 1 year 🖻	2 years 🖻	3 years 🕮
If you cha	ange the expiration date to Renewal F	Date, the expenditures will b	e added. You can	heck the rene	wal days in the Renev	val Duration column.		

Step 6 Select a payment method and make your payment. Once the order is paid for, the renewal is complete.

----End

Setting the Same Renewal Day for Yearly/Monthly Resources

If the instances have different expiry dates, you can set the same renewal day, for example, the first day of each month, to make it easier to manage renewals.

In **Figure 2-19**, a user sets the same renewal day for two resources that will expire at different dates.

Figure 2-19 Setting the same renewal day for resources with different expiry dates

Procedure	1. Configu	re a renewal date.	2. Select res	ources for operations.	3. Renew to the renewal date.
Rules	For example, Resource A Expiration: April 17	, the renewal date is t Renewal for 1	the 1 day of ea	ch month. Additional renewal for 14 days	Expiration: June 01
	Resource B Expiration: May 08	Renewal for 1	month	Additional renewal fo days	r 24 Expiration: July 01

For more details, see **Setting a Renewal Date**.

2.6.3 Auto-renewing an Instance

Auto-renewal can prevent instances from being automatically deleted if you forget to manually renew them. The auto-renewal rules are as follows:

- The first auto-renewal date is based on when an instance expires and the billing cycle.
- The auto-renewal period of an instance depends on the subscription term.
 - Monthly subscriptions renew each month.
 - Yearly subscriptions renew each year.
- You can enable auto-renewal any time before an instance expires. By default, the system will make the first attempt to charge your account for the renewal at 03:00 seven days before the expiry date. If this attempt fails, it will make another attempt at 03:00 every day until the subscription is renewed or expired.
- After auto-renewal is enabled, you can still renew the instance manually if you want to. After a manual renewal is complete, auto-renewal is still valid, and the renewal fee will be deducted from your account seven days before the new expiry date.
- By default, the renewal fee is deducted from your account seven days before the new expiry date. You can change this auto-renewal payment date as required.

For more information about auto-renewal rules, see Auto-Renewal Rules.

Prerequisites

Your yearly/monthly instance is not expired.

Enabling Auto-Renewal During Purchase

You can enable auto-renewal on the instance purchase page, as shown in **Figure 2-20**. For details, see **Buying an Instance**.

Figure 2-20 Enabling auto-renewal

Quantity	-	1	+ () You can buy 64 more MongoDB instances that are compatible with the MongoDB database
	Auto	-renew	Deducti	on rule and Renewal duration

Enabling Auto-Renewal on the Renewals Page

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** Hover over **Billing & Costs** in the upper part of the console and choose **Renewal** from the drop-down list.
- **Step 3** Select the search criteria.
 - On the **Auto Renewals** page, you can view the resources that auto-renewal has been enabled for.
 - You can enable auto-renewal for resources on the Manual Renewals, Payper-Use After Expiration, and Renewals Canceled pages.

Figure 2-21 Renewal management

Renewals		Feedback Quick Links Renew Domain	Set Renewal Date	Modify Message Recipient	Set Deduction Date for Auto-Renewal				
1. If you want to continue using any resources about to expire, refer to How Do I Renew Resour 2. Renewals or changes to pay-per-use will be applied after the current subscription term ends. 3. If you want to learn with tappen after a resource expire, refer to Mark Are a Groce Fredor 4. If you want to renew your subscriptions more easily, refer to Automatically Renewing a Resource 4. If you want to renew your subscriptions more easily, refer to Automatically Renewing a Resource 1. If you want to renew your subscriptions more easily, refer to Automatically Renewing a Resource 1. If you want to renew your subscriptions more easily.	ces? and How Do I Change the Bi and a Retention Period? rce and Setting a Renewal Date	iling Mode from Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use?							
Instances expiring seen: 0; Instances to be frozen: 0; Instances to be released 7. Please renew in time. Wew Instances.									
Expires Expire in 30 days Expire in 15 days Expire in 7 days Expired Frozen	Custom Name/ID/Order	Number V Enter a resource name, resource ID,	or orde Q						
Service Type 1 + Region All	Do not show res	ources that have orders pending payment							
Manual Renewals (1) Auto Renewals (0) Pay-per-Use After Expiration (0)	Renewals Canceled (0))							
Batch Renew Enable Auto-Renew Change to Pay-per-Use After Expiration	Cancel Renewal Bate	ch Export			Export Renewal Prices C				
Instance Name/ID Product Type/Specifications	Region	Provisioned/Expires	Status	Validity Period	Operation				
~ 🗆		Jul 18, 2023 11:34:01 GMT+08:00 Aug 18, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Provisioned	25 days until expiration Delete after retention period	Renew More +				

Step 4 Enable auto-renewal for yearly/monthly resources.

Enabling auto-renewal for a single instance: Locate the instance that you
want to enable auto-renewal for and choose More > Enable Auto-Renew in
the Operation column.

Figure 2-22 Enabling auto-renewal for an instance

Renewals		Feedback 📴 Quick Links Renew Domai	n Set Renewal Date	Modify Message Recipient	Set Deduction Date for Auto-Renewal
1. If you want to continue using any resources about to expres, refer to How Do I Renew Resources about to express to pay-per-use will be explicit after the current subscription term ends. J. If you want to learn what happens their a resource express, refer to What Are a Groze Period and 4. If you want to renew your subscriptions more easily, refer to Automatically Renewing a Resource.	es? and How Do I Change the Bi ind a Retention Period? ce and Setting a Renewal Date	illing Mode from Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use?			
() Instances expiring soon: 0; Instances to be frozen: 0; Instances to be released: 7. Please rener	v in time. View instances.				
Expires Expire in 30 days Expire in 15 days Expire in 7 days Expired Prozen Service Type Region Al	Vustom Name/ID/Order Do not show res	Number There a resource name, resource IC), or orde Q		
Manual Renewals (1) Auto Renewals (0) Pay-per-Use After Expiration (0)	Renewals Canceled (0))			
Batch Renew Enable Auto-Renew Change to Pay-per-Use After Expiration	Cancel Renewal Bab	ich Export			Export Renewal Prices
Instance Name/ID Product Type/Specifications	Region	Provisioned/Expires	Status	Validity Period	Operation
× 🗆		Jul 18, 2023 11:34:01 GMT+08:00 Aug 18, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Provisioned	25 days until expiration Delete after retention period Enable Auto-Renew	Renew More 🔺
				Change to Pay-per-Us Cancel Renewal Release ①	a After Expiration

• Enabling auto-renewal for multiple instances at a time: Select the instances that you want to enable auto-renewal for and click **Enable Auto-Renew** above the list.

Figure 2-23 Enabling auto-renewal for multiple instances

Ianual Renewals (9) Auto Renewals (0) Pay-per-Use After Expiration (0) Renewals Canceled (0)										
Batch Renew Enable Auto-Renew	Change to Pay-per-Use After Expiration	Cancel Renewal	Batch Export			Export Renewal Prices				
Instance Name/ID	Product Type/Specifications	Region	Provisioned/Expires	Status	Validity Period	Operation				
× 🛛			Apr 26, 2023 10:38:08 GMT+08:00 May 26, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Frozen	3 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Cancel Renewal More +				
~ 🗆			Apr 26, 2023 09:55:03 GMT+08:00 May 26, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Frozen	3 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Renew More +				
~ 🗆			May 16, 2023 15:29:36 GMT+08:00 Jun 16, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Frozen	4 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Renew More 👻				
~ 🗆			May 18, 2023 18:19:32 GMT+08:00 Jun 18, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Frozen	6 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Renew More 💌				
~ 🗆			May 18, 2023 17:06:19 GMT+08:00 Jun 18, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Frozen	6 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Renew More 💌				
× 🛛			Jun 01, 2023 22:51:24 GMT+08:00 Jul 01, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Frozen	19 days until deletion Delete after retention period	Cancel Renewal More +				
~ 🗆			Jun 02, 2023 11:34:42 GMT+08:00 Jul 02, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Frozen	6 hours 48 minutes until del. Delete after retention period	Cancel Renewal More 🔻				
~ 🖸			Jul 18, 2023 11:34:01 GMT+08:00 Aug 18, 2023 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Provisioned	25 days until expiration Delete after retention period	Renew More -				
~ 🛛			Jul 24, 2023 15:54:35 GMT+08:00 Jul 24, 2024 23:59:59 GMT+08:00	Provisioned	366 days until expiration Delete after retention period	Renew More -				

Step 5 Select a renewal period, specify the auto-renewal times, and click **Pay**.

	Instance	Name/ID	Service	Current Configuration	Region	Billing M	Validity Deriod	Current Auto-R	Remaining	End Time
× •	instance	indine in the	Service III	Current Comgulation	Region	Monthly	25 days until exp	None	Unlimited	-
Vew Auto-Re Period	enew (III)									
	1 mont	h	3 m	onths	6 months		9 months		1 year	
Auto-renewa	ls 🗌 Pr	eset Auto-renev	vals							
	OF									

Figure 2-24 Enabling auto-renewal

2.7 Bills

You can view the resource usage and bills for different billing cycles on the **Bills** page in the Billing Center.

Bill Generation

Transaction records for yearly/monthly subscriptions are generated immediately after being paid for.

A pay-per-use resource is billed by the hour, day, or month, depending on the resource's usage type. The GeminiDB Mongo instance usage is billed by the hour. For details, see **Bill Run for Pay-per-Use Resources**

You are not charged immediately after a record is generated. For example, if a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance (which is billed on an hourly basis) is deleted at 08:30, you will still have expenditures for the 08:00 to 09:00 hour. However, you will not likely be billed for the 08:00 to 09:00 hour until about 10:00. On the **Bills** page of the Billing Center, select the **Bill Details** tab. **Expenditure Time** in the bill indicates the time when the pay-per-use resource is used.

Viewing Bills of a Specific Resource

[Method 1: Use the instance ID to search for a bill.]

- Step 1 Log in to the management console and click Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 2** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose bill you want to view and click its name.
- **Step 3** Click the icon shown in the figure below to copy the instance ID.

Figure 2-25 Copying the instance ID

Instance Information			
DB Instance Name	∠ ?	DB Instance ID	đ

Step 4 On the top menu bar, choose **Billing & Costs** > **Bills**.

The **Bills** page is displayed.

Step 5 Choose Transactions and Detailed Bills > Bill Details. On the displayed page, select Resource ID as the filter criteria, enter the obtained instance ID, and click the Q icon.

Figure 2-26 Searching for a bill

Transaction	Bills (?)	Bill Details (?)											
Billing Cycle	Dec 2023	¥											
Sort By	Usage 🛛 🙆	Data Period	By billing cycle	By day	Details	Search for rest	ources?						
Resource	ID:		🛛 🔕 🔻 Add	filter								×Q	7 3
Billing	Enterpr 7	Account Name (?)	Service 77	Resour 🏹	Billing 🍞	Bill Type 🏼 🏹	Resource N	Resource Tag	Specificatio	Region 7	AZ	Usage Type	Unit Price (
Dec 2	default		GeminiDB (GeminiDB I	Pay-per-Use	Expenditure	geminidb-6e	-	GeminiDB C		AZ1,AZ2	architecture	0.

By default, the bill details are displayed by usage and billing cycle. You can choose other display options as required. For details, see **Bill Details**.

----End

[Method 2: Use the resource name to search for a bill.]

- Step 1 Log in to the management console and click Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 2** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose bill you want to view and click its name.
- **Step 3** On the **Basic Information** > **Instance Information** page, obtain the instance name.

Figure 2-27 Copying the instance name

Instance Information

DB	Instance	Name	0	\bigcirc	
_			-	<u> </u>	

Step 4 On the top menu bar, choose **Billing & Costs** > **Bills**.

The **Bills** page is displayed.

Step 5 Choose Transactions and Detailed Bills > Bill Details. On the displayed page, select Resource Name as the filter criteria, enter the obtained instance ID, and click the Q icon.

Figure 2-28 Searching for a bill

Transactio	n Bills 🕜	Bill Details ⑦											
Billing Cycle	Dec 2023	•											
Sort By	Usage 🔘	Data Period	ly billing cycle	By day	Details	Search for res	ources?		•				
Resource	Name:	O V Ad	d filter									× C	1 ± 💿
Billing	Enterpr 🍞	Account Name ③	Service 7	Resour 🏹	Billing 7	Bill Type 🍞	Resource N	Resource Tag	Specificatio	Region 🍞	AZ	Usage Type	Unit Price (
Dec 2	default		GeminiDB (GeminiDB S	Pay-per-Use	Expenditure	geminidb-6e a9307387cb	-			AZ1,AZ2	Duration	0.003
Dec 2	default		GeminiDB (GeminiDB N	Pay-per-Use	Expenditure	geminidb-6e e4e2103b54				AZ2	Duration	1.7
Dec 2	default		GeminiDB (GeminiDB N	Pay-per-Use	Expenditure	geminidb-6e 36f6da1900				AZ1	Duration	1.7
Dec 2	default		GeminiDB (GeminiDB N	Pay-per-Use	Expenditure	geminidb-6e 1e99218fd9	-			AZ3	Duration	1.7
Dec 2	default		GeminiDB (GeminiDB I	Pay-per-Use	Expenditure	geminidb-6e a9307387cb				AZ1,AZ2	architecture	0.

By default, the bill details are displayed by usage and billing cycle. You can choose other display options as required. For details, see **Bill Details**.

----End

Scenario Example: Checking the Consistency of the Actual Usage and Billed Usage

Assume that you purchased a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance at 10:09:06 on April 8, 2023 and deleted it later that day, at 12:09:06.

• Transaction Records

Pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance usage is calculated by the second and but billed on an hourly basis. You can check the transaction records against the actual usage. The billed resources are billed separately. For details, see **Table 2-11**.

Service Type	GeminiDB Mongo
Resour ce Type	GeminiDB Mongo storage
Billing Mode	Pay-per-use
Expend iture Time	 For the period of time from 10:09:06 to 12:09:06 on April 08, 2023, 6 transaction records would be generated for the resource usage in the following periods: 2023/04/08 10:09:06 - 2023/04/08 11:00:00 2023/04/08 11:00:00 - 2023/04/08 12:00:00 2023/04/08 12:00:00 - 2023/04/08 12:09:06
List Price	List price on the official website = Usage x Unit price x Capacity The GeminiDB Mongo instance was used for 3,054 seconds in the first period, and the unit price can be obtained on the Pricing Details page. The list price for the first period = $(3054 \div 3600) \times$ $0.0014 \times 40 = 0.04750667 USD. Similarly, you can calculate the instance list price for the other periods.
Discou nted Amoun t	Discounts offered for cloud services, for example, commercial discounts, partner authorized discounts, and promotional discounts. It is the discounted amount based on the list price.
Truncat ed Amoun t	Billing of Huawei Cloud is calculated to the 8th decimal place. However, the amount due is truncated to the 2nd decimal place. The third and later decimal places are referred to as the truncated amounts. Take the first period as an example. The truncated amount is \$0.00750667 USD.
Amoun t Due	Amount due = List price – Discount amount – Truncated amount Take the first period as an example. If the discount amount is 0, the amount due is \$0.04 USD (0.04750667 - 0 - 0.00750667).

Table 2-11 GeminiDB Mongo transaction records

• Bill details of the GeminiDB Mongo instance

Bill details can display in multiple ways. By default, the bill details of a resource are displayed by usage and by billing cycle. **Table 2-12** illustrates the GeminiDB Mongo instance bill details, which can be used to check against the actual usage.

Table 2-12	Bill	details	of the	GeminiDB	Mongo	instance
-------------------	------	---------	--------	----------	-------	----------

Service Type	GeminiDB Mongo
Resour ce Type	GeminiDB Mongo storage
Billing Mode	Pay-per-use
Resour ce Name/I D	Name and ID of a specific GeminiDB Mongo instance Example: nosql-b388 and 21e8811a64bf4de88bc2e2556da17983in12
Specific ations	GeminiDB Mongo storage
Usage Type	Duration for a pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instance
Unit Price	When pay-per-use billing is used, the unit price is only provided if the amount is equal to the usage multiplied by the unit price. No unit price is provided in other pricing modes, for example, tiered pricing.
	You can search for the unit price for pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instances on Product Pricing Details .
Unit	Displayed on the Product Pricing Details page. Example: USD/GB/hour.
Usage	Depends on the unit of the unit price, which is USD/GB/hour. Storage usage is billed by the hour. Example: 2 hours.
Usage Unit	Hour
List Price	List price on the official website = Usage x Unit price x Capacity The GeminiDB Mongo instance is used for 2 hours in total, and the unit price is obtained on the Product Pricing Details page. The list price = 2 * 0.0014 * 40 = \$0.112 USD.
Discou nted Amoun t	Discounts offered for cloud services, for example, commercial discounts, partner authorized discounts, and promotional discounts. It is the discounted amount based on the list price.

Amoun	Amount that should be paid for used cloud services after
t Due	discounts are applied.

2.8 Arrears

If your configured payment method is unable to pay for your bill, your account will be in arrears. You will need to update you payment method or to top up your account in a timely manner if you want to continue using your instance resources.

Arrears Reason

If you do not have yearly/monthly instances, your account falls into arrears any time your configured payment method is unable to pay for the used resources on the pay-per-use basis.

Arrears Impact

Yearly/Monthly

This is a pre-paid billing mode, so you can continue using yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo resources even if your account is in arrears. However, you cannot perform operations such as purchasing GeminiDB Mongo instances, upgrading instance specifications, and renewing subscriptions, because they will generate new expenditures.

• Pay-per-Use

If your configured payment method is unable to pay a bill for pay-per-use resources, the resources enter a grace period. After you top up your account, Huawei Cloud will bill you for expenditures generated by the resources during the grace period. You can view the expenditures on the **Overview** page of the Billing Center.

If your account is still in arrears after the grace period ends, the resources enter the retention period and their status turns to **Frozen**. You cannot perform any operations on these resources.

After the retention period ends, the compute resources (vCPUs and memory) and EIPs will be released and cannot be restored.





NOTE

The grace period and retention period are both 15 days.

Avoiding and Handling Arrears

Make sure you have a valid payment method configured as soon as possible after your account is in arrears. For details, see **Topping Up an Account**.

If a GeminiDB Mongo instance is no longer used, you can delete it to avoid generating further expenditures.

To help make sure your account never falls into arrears, you can configure the **Balance Alert** on the **Overview** page of the Billing Center. Then, any time an expenditure quota drops to below the threshold you specify, Huawei Cloud automatically notifies you by SMS or email.

2.9 Billing Termination

Yearly/Monthly Resources

When you purchase a yearly/monthly resource, such as a yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instance, you make a one-time up-front payment. By default, the billing automatically stops when the purchased subscription expires.

- If a yearly/monthly resource is no longer needed before the subscription expires, you can unsubscribe from the resource. The system will return a certain amount of money to your account based on whether the resource is subject to five-day unconditional unsubscription or whether cash coupons or discount coupons are used. For details about unsubscription rules, see Unsubscriptions.
- If you have enabled auto-renewal but no longer wish to automatically renew the subscription, disable it before the auto-renewal date (7 days before the expiration date by default) to avoid unexpected expenditures.

Pay-per-Use Resources

If pay-per-use resources, such as pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instances, are no longer required, delete them in a timely manner.

Searching for Resources from Bills and Stopping Billing

To ensure that all related resources are deleted, you can search the billing records by resource ID, and then delete the resources you identify in this way.

[Method 1: Use the resource ID in the bill to search for the resource.]

Step 1 Log in to the management console. On the top menu bar, choose Billing & Costs > Bills.

The **Bills** page is displayed.

Step 2 Choose **Transactions and Detailed Bills** > **Bill Details**, and click the icon shown in the following figure to copy the resource ID.

Figure 2-30 Copying the resource ID

Transaction	Transaction Bills ⑦ Bill Details ⑦												
Billing Cycle	Billing Cycle Dec 2023 •												
Sort By	Usage 🔞	Data Period B	y billing cycle	By day	Details	Search for rest	ources?						
Resource	ID: a9307387cb05	4eff83dbfc2d7faef355in0	6 🔘 🗸 Add	filter				- 1				× C	1 ± ©
Billing	Enterpr 7	Account Name (?)	Service 7	Resour 🍞	Billing 7	Bill Type 🍞		u	•	Region 7	AZ	Usage Type	Unit Price (
Dec 2	default		GeminiDB (GeminiDB I	Pay-per-Use	Expenditure	geminidb-6e a9307387cb	-	GeminiDB C		AZ1,AZ2	architecture	0.

- **Step 3** Log in to the management console and click **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 4** Select the region where the resource is located, select **Instance ID** and enter the resource ID copied in **Step 2**, and click the ^Q icon to search for the resource.



All projects	V O Instance ID:	: jAdd filter				× 10 C D
□ Name/ID ⊖	DB Instance Compatible Stor	Status 😔 Specifications	Storage Space	Load balan Enterprise	Billing Mode	Operation
	Replica set MongoDB 4.0	Available	0% 0/100GB	default	Pay-per-Use Created on J	Change to Yearly/Monthly Change Specifications. More \sim

Step 5 Locate the instance you want to delete and click **More** > **Delete** in the **Operation** column. Ensure that the resource is not found in the list.

NOTE

You are billed one hour after the resource usage is calculated, so a bill may still be generated after the pay-per-use resource is deleted. For example, if you delete an instance (which is billed on an hourly basis) at 08:30, the expenditures for that hour from 08:00 to 09:00 are usually not billed until about 10:00.

----End

[Method 2: Use the resource name in the bill to search for the resource.]

The **Bills** page is displayed.

Step 2 Choose **Transactions and Detailed Bills** > **Bill Details**, and click the icon shown in the following figure to copy the resource name.

Figure 2-32 Copying the resource name

Transaction		Bill Details (7)											
Billing Cycle	Dec 2023	*											
Sort By	Usage 🛛 🔞	Data Period B	y billing cycle	By day	Details	Search for resi	ources?						
Resource I	D: 3e2f3299ad1b4	d45a2f0473c296db72di	n13 🔘 🕅 Ad	d filter								×Q	± ⊚
Billing	Enterpr 7	Account Name (?)	Service 7	Resour 🍞	Billing 7	Bill Type 🍞	٥			Region 7	AZ	Usage Type	Unit Price (
Dec 2	default		GeminiDB (GeminiDB I	Pay-per-Use	Expenditure	geminidb-38 3e2f3299ad,	-	GeminiDB I		AZ1,AZ2	architecture	0.

- Step 3 Log in to the management console and click Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 4** Enter the instance name copied in **Step 2** in the search box and click Q.

Figure 2-33 Searching for resources

All projects	~		name:			×	Add filter						× I 💿	c D
Name.ID 0		DB Instance	Compatible	Stor	Status 🖯	Specifications	Storage Space	e.	Load balan	Enterprise	Billing Mode	Operation		
		Replica set	MongoDB 4.0		Available		0%	0/100GB	-	default	Pay-per-Use Created on J	Change to Yearly/Monthly Cl	nange Specifications	More ~

Step 5 Locate the instance you want to delete and click **More** > **Delete** in the **Operation** column. Ensure that the resource is not found in the list.

NOTE

You are billed one hour after the resource usage is calculated, so a bill may still be generated after the pay-per-use resource is deleted. For example, if you delete an instance (which is billed on an hourly basis) at 08:30, the expenditures for that hour from 08:00 to 09:00 are usually not billed until about 10:00.

----End

2.10 Cost Management

2.10.1 Cost Composition

GeminiDB Mongo costs consist of two parts:

- Resource costs: costs of compute and storage resources. For details, see Billing Modes.
- O&M costs: labor costs incurred during the use of GeminiDB Mongo.



2.10.2 Cost Allocation

A good cost accountability system is a prerequisite for cost management. It ensures that departments, business teams, and owners are accountable for their respective cloud costs. An enterprise can allocate cloud costs to different teams or projects so as to have a clear picture of their respective costs.

Huawei Cloud **Cost Center** provides various tools for you to group costs in different ways. You can experiment with these tools and find a way that works best for you.

• By linked account

The enterprise master account can manage costs by grouping the costs of its member accounts by linked account. For details, see **Viewing Costs by Linked Account**.

• By enterprise project

Before allocating costs, enable Enterprise Project Management Service (EPS) and plan your enterprise projects based on your organizational structure or service needs. When purchasing cloud resources, select an enterprise project

so that the costs of resources will be allocated to the selected enterprise project. For details, see **Viewing Costs by Enterprise Project**.



Enterprise Project	•	C	View Project Management	?

• By cost tag

You use tags to sort your Huawei Cloud resources in a variety of different ways, for example, by purpose, owner, or environment. The following is the process of managing costs by predefined tags (recommended).

Figure 2-35 Adding a tag



For details, see Viewing Costs by Cost Tag.

• By cost category

You can use cost categories provided by **Cost Center** to split shared costs. Shared costs are the costs of resources (compute, network, storage, or resource packages) shared across multiple departments or the costs that cannot be directly split by cost tag or enterprise project. These costs are not directly attributable to a singular owner, and they cannot be categorized into a singular cost type. In this case, you can define cost splitting rules to fairly allocate these costs among teams or business units. For details, see **Viewing Cost By Cost Category**.

2.10.3 Cost Analysis

To precisely control and optimize your costs, you need a clear understanding of what parts of your enterprise incurred different costs. **Cost Center** visualizes your original costs and amortized costs using various dimensions and display filters for

cost analysis so that you can analyze the trends and drivers of your service usage and costs from a variety of perspectives or within different defined scopes.

You can also use cost anomaly detection provided by **Cost Center** to detect unexpected expenses in a timely manner. In this way, costs can be monitored, analyzed, and traced.

For details, see **Performing Cost Analysis to Explore Costs and Usage** and **Enabling Cost Anomaly Detection to Identify Anomalies**.

2.10.4 Cost Optimization

You can identify resources with high costs based on the analysis results in the cost center, determine the causes of high costs, and take optimization measures accordingly.

Resource rightsizing

- View GeminiDB Mongo monitoring metrics on Cloud Eye, such as the CPU, memory, and disk usage. If the current configuration is too high, you can reduce the configuration by changing specifications.
- Monitor idle GeminiDB Mongo resources and delete idle instances in a timely manner.

Billing mode selection

Different types of services have different requirements on resource usage periods, so the most economical billing mode for one resource may not be the best option for another resource.

- For mature services that tend to be stable for the long term, select yearly/ monthly billing.
- For short-term, unpredictable services that experience traffic bursts and cannot afford to be interrupted, select pay-per-use billing.
- Monitor the lifecycle of instances and renew yearly/monthly resources that are about to expire in a timely manner.

2.11 Billing FAQs

2.11.1 What Are the Differences Between Yearly/Monthly and Pay-per-Use Billing?

Yearly/Monthly is a prepaid billing mode in which resources are billed based on the service duration. This cost-effective mode is ideal when the duration of resource usage is predictable. It is recommended for long-term users.

Pay-per-use billing is a postpaid payment mode. This billing mode allows you to make or cancel subscriptions at any time. Pricing is listed on a per-hour basis, but bills are calculated based on the actual usage duration.

2.11.2 Can I Switch Between Yearly/Monthly and Pay-per-Use Billing?

You can change the billing mode of your instance from yearly/monthly to pay-peruse or vice versa.

- For details about how to change the billing mode from yearly/monthly to a pay-per-use, see Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use.
- For details about how to change the billing mode from pay-per-use to yearly/ monthly, see **Pay-per-Use to Yearly/Monthly**.

3 Getting Started with GeminiDB Mongo API

3.1 Service Overview

This section describes how to buy an instance and then connect to and manage it.

Process



Procedure

The process of buying and using an instance involves the following steps: Step 1: Log in to the GeminiDB Mongo API console. Step 2: **Buy an instance.**

Step 3: Connect to the instance.

3.2 Buying a Replica Set Instance

This section describes how to buy a replica set instance that is compatible with MongoDB APIs. You can customize your replica set instance with appropriate computing capability and storage space based on service requirements.

Prerequisites

• You have registered a Huawei Cloud account.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 On the Instances page, click Buy DB Instance.
- **Step 4** On the displayed page, select a billing mode, specify instance specifications and click **Next**.

Figure 3-2 Billing mode and basic information



Parameter	Description
Billing Mode	Method that the instance is billed in. The value can be Yearly/ Monthly or Pay-per-use .
	Yearly/Monthly
	 In this mode, specify Required Duration at the bottom of the page. The system deducts the fees incurred from your account based on the service price.
	 If you do not need such an instance any longer after it expires, change the billing mode to pay-per-use to optimize costs. For details, see Changing the Billing Mode from Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use.
	NOTE Yearly/Monthly instances cannot be deleted directly. If such an instance is no longer required, unsubscribe from it. For details, see Unsubscribing from a Yearly/Monthly DB Instance.
	Pay-per-use
	 If you select this billing mode, you are billed based on how much time the instance is in use.
	 If you expect to use an instance for a long period of time, change its billing mode to yearly/monthly to optimize costs. For details, see Changing the Billing Mode from Pay-per-Use to Yearly/Monthly.

Table 3-1 Billing mode

Table 3-2 Basic informati	on
---------------------------	----

Parameter	Description
Region	The region where the instance is deployed. NOTICE Select the region nearest where you will be accessing the DB from so latency can be kept to a minimum and response time will be faster. Instances deployed in different regions cannot communicate with each other through a private network. After you buy an instance, you cannot change its region.
DB Instance Name	 The instance name: Can be the same as an existing instance name. Can include 4 to 64 bytes and must start with a letter. It is case-sensitive and allows only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_). After an instance is created, you can change its name. For
Compatible API	details, see Modifying the Name of an Instance .
	Mongobb
DB Instance Type	Replica set
DB Engine Version	4.0

Parameter	Description
AZ	Availability zone where the instance is created. An AZ is a part of a region with its own independent power supplies and networks. AZs are physically isolated but can communicate through an internal network.
	An instance can be deployed in one or three AZs.
	• If you want to deploy an instance in a single AZ, select one AZ.
	• If you want to deploy an instance across AZs for disaster recovery, select three AZs. In this deployment mode, the nodes are evenly distributed across the three AZs.

Figure 3-3 Specifications and storage

Instance Specifications	Flavor Name					vCPU Memory
	geminidb.mongodb.r	epset.large.4				2 vCPUs 8 GB
	geminidb.mongodb.r	epset.xlarge.4				4 vCPUs 16 GB
	geminidb.mongodb.r	epset.2xlarge.4				8 vCPUs 32 GB
	geminidb.mongodb.r	epset.4xlarge.4				16 vCPUs 64 GB
	geminidb.mongodb.r	epset.8xlarge.4				32 vCPUs 128 GB
Storage Space	Currently selected geminidb. 10 GB	mongodb.repset.large.4 2 vCPl	Is 8 GB			
(11) 100	240	360	480	600	100 + GB

Table 3-3 Specifications and storage	Table	3-3	Specifications	and	storage
--------------------------------------	-------	-----	----------------	-----	---------

Parameter	Description
Instance Specifications	The CPU and memory of a DB instance. Different performance specifications support different numbers of connections and maximum IOPSs. Select CPU and memory specifications based on your service requirements.
Storage Space	Storage space depends on the instance specifications. The minimum storage space is 100 GB, and the storage space you set must be an integer.

VC
VC

VC</t

Figure 3-4 Network and database configuration

Parameter	Description
VPC	The virtual network where your DB instances are located. A VPC isolates networks for different services. You can select an existing VPC or create a VPC.
	For details about how to create a VPC, see section "Creating a VPC" in the <i>Virtual Private Cloud User Guide</i> .
	With VPC sharing, you can also use a VPC and subnet shared by another account.
	VPC owners can share the subnets in a VPC with one or multiple accounts through Resource Access Manager (RAM). This allows for more efficient use of network resources and reduces O&M costs.
	For more information about VPC subnet sharing, see VPC Sharing in the Virtual Private Cloud User Guide.
	If there are no VPCs available, the system allocates resources to you by default.
	NOTE
	 After the GeminiDB Mongo instance is created, the VPC where the instance resides cannot be changed.
	• If you want to connect to a GeminiDB Mongo instance through an ECS over an internal network, the instance and the ECS must be in the same VPC. If they are not in the same VPC, you can create a VPC peering connection to enable access.
Subnet	A subnet provides dedicated network resources that are logically isolated from other networks, improving network security.
	NOTE IPv6 subnets are not supported. You are advised to create and select IPv4 subnets.

Table 3-4 Network

Parameter	Description
Security Group	A security group controls access between GeminiDB Mongo instances and other services. When you select a security group, you must ensure that it allows the client to access DB instances.
	If there are no security groups available, the system allocates resources to you by default.
SSL	Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) encrypts connections between clients and servers, preventing data from being tampered with or stolen during transmission.
	You can enable SSL to improve data security. After an instance is created, you can connect to it using SSL .
	 NOTE This function is in the open beta test (OBT) phase. To use this function, contact customer service.
	 If SSL is not enabled when you create an instance, you can enable it after the instance is created. For details, see Configuring an SSL Connection.
Access Across CIDR Blocks	Access across CIDR blocks is required only when the CIDR blocks of the client and the replica set instance are different. For example, if the client CIDR block is 192.168.0.0/16 and the replica set instance's CIDR block is 172.16.0.0/24, add the CIDR block 192.168.0.0/16 so that the client can access the replica set instance.
	You can configure cross-CIDR block access when creating a DB instance or after the instance is created.
	• Configure When creating a DB instance, add the CIDR block of the source client (for example, the client that accesses the replica set instance). After the DB instance is created, you can connect to the DB instance from the source client.
	If there are multiple CIDR blocks, click $$ to add them in sequence. Up to 9 CIDR blocks can be configured, but they cannot overlap. NOTE
	 To ensure the ECS and the DB instance can communicate with each other, configure the connection by referring to VPC Peering Connection Overview.
	• Skip Configure the CIDR block of the client later. After a DB instance is created, you can configure access across CIDR blocks by referring to Configuring Access Across CIDR Blocks.

Parameter	Description	
Administrator	The default administrator account is rwuser .	
Administrator Password	 Set a password for the administrator. The password: Must be 8 to 32 characters long. Must contain uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and any of the following special characters: ul@#06.0*. 	
	 For security reasons, you must select a strong password. The system will verify the password strength. 	
	Keep this password secure. If you lose it, the system cannot retrieve it.	
Confirm Password	Enter the administrator password again.	
Parameter Template	A parameter template contains API configuration values that can be applied to one or more instances.	
	After an instance is created, you can modify its parameters to better meet your service requirements. For details, see Modifying Parameters of GeminiDB Mongo Instances .	
	NOTICE When an instance is created, the system uses default values for specification parameters in your customer parameter template.	
Enterprise Project	This parameter is provided for enterprise users.	
	An enterprise project groups cloud resources, so you can manage resources and members by project. The default project is default .	
	Select an enterprise project from the drop-down list. For more information about enterprise projects, see <i>Enterprise</i> <i>Management User Guide</i> .	

Table 3-5 Database configuration

Parameter	Description
Tags	This setting is optional. Adding tags helps you better identify and manage your instances. By default, each instance supports up to 10 tags. To use more tags, contact customer service to apply for a quota of 20 tags.
	A tag consists of a tag key and a tag value.
	If your organization has configured tag policies for GeminiDB Mongo, you need to add tags to instances based on the tag policies. If a tag does not comply with the policies, DB instance creation may fail. Contact your organization administrator to learn more about tag policies.
	• Tag key: Mandatory if the instance is going to be tagged. Each tag key must be unique for each instance. The key can include up to 36 characters, including digits, letters, underscores (_), and hyphens (-).
	• Tag value: Optional if the instance is going to be tagged The value can contain up to 43 characters, including digits, letters, underscores (_), periods (.), and hyphens (-).
	After a DB instance is created, you can view its tag details on the Tags tab. In addition, you can add, modify, and delete tags for existing DB instances. For details, see Managing Tags.

Table 3-6 Tags

Table 3-7	Required	duration
-----------	----------	----------

Parameter	Description
Required Duration	The length of your subscription if you select Yearly/Monthly billing. Subscription lengths range from one month to three years.
Auto-renew	By default, this option is not selected.If you select this option, the renew cycle is the same as the selected duration.

Table 3-8 Quantity

Parameter	Description	
Quantity	GeminiDB Mongo instances can be created in batches. Up to 50 DB instances can be created at a time.	

Step 5 On the displayed page, confirm the instance details.

- For yearly/monthly instances
 - If you need to modify the settings, click **Previous**.
 - If you do not need to modify the settings, read and agree to the service agreement and click **Pay Now** to go to the payment page and complete the payment.
- For pay-per-use instances
 - If you need to modify the settings, click **Previous**.
 - If no modification is required, read and agree to the service agreement and click **Submit**.

Step 6 On the **Instances** page, view and manage your instances.

- Creating a DB instance takes about 5 to 9 minutes. During the process, the instance status displayed in the DB instance list is **Creating**.
- After the creation is complete, the status changes to **Available**.

You can click \bigcirc in the upper right corner of the page to refresh the DB instance statuses.

• During creation, an automated backup policy is enabled by default. A full backup is automatically triggered after a DB instance is created.

----End

3.3 Connecting to a Replica Set Instance

3.3.1 Connection Methods

You can connect to a GeminiDB Mongo replica set instance through a private or public network.

Method	Scenario	Description
Private network	GeminiDB provides a private IP address by default.	High security and performance
	Your applications are deployed on an ECS that is in the same region and VPC as your instances.	

Table 3-9	Connection	methods
-----------	------------	---------

Method	Scenario	Description
Public network	If you cannot access a DB instance through a private IP address, bind an EIP to the DB instance first and connect the ECS to the DB instance through the EIP.	 Low security For faster transmission and improved security, you are advised to migrate your applications to an ECS that is in the same subnet as your instance and use a private IP address to access the instance.

3.3.2 Connecting to a Replica Set Instance over a Private Network

If your applications are deployed on an ECS that is in the same region and VPC as your instances, you can connect to the DB instance over a private network.

This section describes how to use the MongoDB client to connect to a GeminiDB Mongo replica set instance over a private network.

The following uses a Linux ECS and a Window client as an example.

The MongoDB client can connect to an instance with an unencrypted connection or an encrypted connection (SSL). To secure data transmission, connect to your instances using SSL.

Precautions

- The instances must be in the same VPC and subnet as the ECS.
- The ECS must be in a security group that has access to the instances.
 - If the instance is associated with the default security group, you do not need to configure security group rules.
 - If the instance is not associated with the default security group, check whether the security group rules allow the ECS to connect to the instance.

If yes, the ECS can connect to the instance.

If no, add an inbound rule to the security group. For details, see **Configuring Security Group Rules**.

Prerequisites

- 1. You have created and logged in to an ECS. For details, see **Purchasing an ECS** and **Logging In to an ECS**.
- You have installed the MongoDB client on the ECS.
 For details about how to install the MongoDB client, see How Can I Install a MongoDB Client?

SSL Connection

NOTICE

If you connect to an instance over the SSL connection, enable SSL first. Otherwise, an error is reported. For details about how to enable SSL, see **Configuring an SSL Connection**.

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instance Management** page, click the instance.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Connections**.
- **Step 5** In the **Basic Information** area, click $\stackrel{d}{\rightharpoonup}$ next to the **SSL** field to download the root certificate.
- **Step 6** Upload the root certificate to the ECS to be connected to the instance.

The following describes how to upload the certificate to a Linux and a Window $\ensuremath{\mathsf{ECS}}$

 In Linux, run the following command: scp<IDENTITY_FILE><REMOTE_USER>@<REMOTE_ADDRESS>:<REMOTE_DIR>

NOTE

- **IDENTITY_FILE** is the directory where the root certificate resides. The file access permission is 600.
- **REMOTE_USER** is the ECS OS user.
- **REMOTE_ADDRESS** is the ECS address.
- **REMOTE_DIR** is the directory of the ECS to which the root certificate is uploaded.
- In Windows, upload the root certificate using a remote connection tool.
- **Step 7** Connect to a DB instance.
 - Method 1: Use the connection address to connect to a replica set instance (recommended).

The connection addresses provided on the GeminiDB Mongo console includes the IP addresses and ports of the primary node, standby node, and hidden node by default. You can use this connection address to connect to the primary, standby, and hidden nodes of the instance at the same time. In this way, write errors can be avoided after a primary/standby switchover.

Example command:

./mongo "<Connection address>" --ssl --sslCAFile <FILE_PATH> -sslAllowInvalidHostnames

Parameter	Description
<connection< td=""><td>Connection address of the instance to be connected.</td></connection<>	Connection address of the instance to be connected.
address>	On the Instance Management page, click the instance to go to the Basic Information page. Obtain the private IP address on the Connections page.
	Figure 3-5 Obtaining the connection address
	Basic Information Database Port 8635 / VPC
	SSL Disabled 🕁 Update Certificate Subnet
	Address Access Access CIDR Blocks Disabled Enable Enable
	IPv4 Address mangada //reviser ****@1
	 In the preceding command, ***** needs to be replaced with the password of the instance administrator. If the password contains at signs (@), exclamation marks (!), or percent signs (%), replace them with hexadecimal URL codes %40, %21, and %25 respectively.
	For example, if the password is ****@ %***!, the corresponding URL code is **** %40%25*** %21.
	 replica in replicaSet=replica is the name of a replica set. The name of GeminiDB Mongo replica set is fixed and cannot be changed.
<file_path></file_path>	Path for storing the root certificate.

Table 3-10 Parameter description

Example:

./mongo "mongodb://rwuser:****@192.168.0.252:8635,192.168.0.31:8635/ test?authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica" --ssl --sslCAFile/tmp/ca.crt -sslAllowInvalidHostnames

NOTE

- A replica set instance uses the management IP address to generate SSL certificate.
 --sslAllowInvalidHostnames is required when you connect to a replica set over a private network.
- If you connect to an instance over a private IP address, add double quotation marks before and after the connection information.

If the following information is displayed, the instance is successfully connected: replica:PRIMARY>

• Method 2: Connect to a single node.

Example command:

./mongo --host < DB_HOST> --port < DB_PORT> -u < DB_USER> -p -authenticationDatabase admin --ssl --sslCAFile<FILE_PATH> -sslAllowInvalidHostnames

Enter the password of the database account if the following information is displayed:

Enter password:

Table	3-11	Parameter	description
abic	J -11	rarameter	ucscription

Parameter	Description		
<db_host></db_host>	 Private IP address of the primary or standby node of the instance to be connected. 		
	Primary node: You can read and write data.		
	Secondary node: You can only read data.		
	On the Instance Management page, click the instance to go to the Basic Information page. On the Connections page, obtain the private IP address of the corresponding node.		
	Figure 3-6 Obtaining the node IP address		
	Basic Information Database Port 8635 A VPC		
	SSL Disabled 🕁 Update Certificate Subnet		
	Address Access Access CIDR Blocks Disabled Enable		
	IPv4 Address mongodb./invuser.****@192.168.100.5.8635,192.168.91.224.8635,192.168.96.187.8635/test?audbSource=admin&replicaSet=replica 🖸		
	NameliD Role Status AZ Private IP Address EIP Operation		
	Primary O Available az3 IPv4. O Unbound Bind EIP		
	Secondary O Aveilable az3 IPv4: O Unbound Bind EIP		
	Secondary O Available az3 IPv4: O Unbound Bind EIP		
	Alternatively, obtain the private IP address of a node in the Node Information area on the Basic Information page.		
<db_port></db_port>	Database port		
<db_user></db_user>	Username of the instance administrator. The default value is rwuser .		
<file_path></file_path>	Path for storing the root certificate.		

Example:

./mongo --host 192.168.0.31 --port 8635 -u rwuser -p -authenticationDatabase admin --ssl --sslCAFile /tmp/ca.crt -sslAllowInvalidHostnames

If the following information is displayed, the corresponding node is successfully connected:

- The primary node of the replica set is connected. replica:PRIMARY>
- The standby node of the replica set is connected. replica:SECONDARY>

----End

Non-SSL Connection

NOTICE

If you connect to an instance over an unencrypted connection, disable SSL first. Otherwise, an error is reported. For details about how to disable SSL, see **Configuring an SSL Connection**.

- **Step 1** Connect to the ECS.
- **Step 2** Connect to the DB instance in the directory where the MongoDB client is located.
 - Use the connection address to connect to a replica set instance (recommended).

The connection addresses provided on the GeminiDB Mongo console includes the IP addresses and ports of the primary node, standby node, and hidden node by default. Connecting to a replica set with this method allows access to the primary, standby, and hidden nodes at the same time, so write errors can be avoided after a primary/standby switchover.

Example command:

./mongo "<Connection address>"

Parameter	Description	
<connectio n address></connectio 	You can obtain the connection address in either of the following ways: Click the instance name. On the displayed Basic Information page, the address is displayed in the Address field in the Network Information area.	
	Figure 3-8 Obtaining the private IP address	
	Network Information VPC Security Group Subnet Database Port 8635 /	
	IPv4 Address //test?authSource=admin&repicaSetvepica	
	Alternatively, click the instance name to go to the Basic Information page. In the navigation pane on the left, choose Connections to obtain the address of the instance.	
	Figure 3-9 Obtaining the connection address	
	Basic Information Database Port 8635 A VPC	
	SSL Disabled L Update Certificate Subnet	
	Address Access Across CIDR Blocks Deabled Enable	
	IPv4 Address mongodo///wuser.***@1 /vtest?au/hSource=admin&replicaSet=replica	
	 In the preceding command, ***** needs to be replaced with the password of the instance administrator. If the password contains at signs (@),exclamation marks (!), or percent signs (%), replace them with hexadecimal URL codes %40, %21, and %25 respectively. 	
	For example, if the password is ****@ %***!, the corresponding URL code is **** %40%25*** %21.	
	 replica in replicaSet=replica is the name of a replica set. The name of GeminiDB Mongo replica set is fixed and cannot be changed. 	

Table 3-12 Parameter description

Example:

```
./mongo "mongodb://
rwuser:****@192.168.0.196:8635,192.168.0.67:8635,192.168.0.32:8635/test?
authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica"
```

If the following information is displayed, the connection is successful. replica:PRIMARY>

Connecting to a single node.
 You can also connect to the private IP address of a specified node.
 Example command:

./mongo --host <*DB_HOST*> --port <*DB_PORT*> -u <*DB_USER*> -p -authenticationDatabase admin

Table	3-13	Parameter	description
	• • •	i aranneter	acsemption

Parameter	Description				
<db_host></db_host>	Private IP address of the primary or standby node of the instance to be connected.				
	- Primary node: You can read and write data.				
	- Secondary node: You can only read data.				
	On the Instance Management page, click the instance to go to the Basic Information page. Obtain the private IP address of the corresponding node from the node information list.				
	Figure 3-10 Obtaining the private IP address				
	Node Internation Additions Additions Additions (PP Operation (Additions) Image: Additional or and the state of the state				
	Alternatively, click the target instance to go to the Basic Information page. In the navigation pane on the left, choose Connections . On the Connections page, obtain the private IP address of the node.				
	Database Port 8635 / VPC				
	Address				
	Access Across CIDR Blocks Disabled Enable PV4 Address				
	netronicourd-nomepocasi-sport				
<db_port></db_port>	Database port				
<db_user></db_user>	Username of the instance administrator. The default value is rwuser .				

Enter the password of the database account if the following information is displayed:

Enter password:

Example:

./mongo --host 192.168.1.6 --port 8635 -u rwuser -p -authenticationDatabase admin

If the following information is displayed, the corresponding node is successfully connected:

The command output for connecting to the primary node of the replica set is as follows:

replica:PRIMARY>

The command output for connecting to the standby node of the replica set is as follows:

replica:SECONDARY>

----End

3.3.3 Connecting to a Replica Set Instance over a Public Network

3.3.3.1 Connecting to a Replica Set Instance Using Robo 3T

If you connect to an instance from your local device, you can bind an EIP to the instance and use Robo 3T to connect to the instance over a public network.

This section describes how to use Robo 3T to connect to a replica set instance over a public network.

A local Windows device is used as an example.

Robo 3T can connect to an instance with an unencrypted connection or an encrypted connection (SSL). To improve data transmission security, you are advised to connect to instances using the SSL connection.

Prerequisites

- 1. An EIP has been bound to a replica set instance, and security group rules have been configured to ensure that the instance is accessible from Robo 3T over the EIP. For details, see **Binding and Unbinding an EIP** and **Configuring Security Group Rules**.
- 2. Install Robo 3T.

For details, see How Do I Install Robo 3T?

SSL Connection

NOTICE

If you connect to an instance over the SSL connection, enable SSL first. Otherwise, an error is reported. For details about how to enable SSL, see **Configuring an SSL Connection**.

Step 1 Obtain the EIP and port of the replica set instance.

NOTE

Primary node: You can read and write data. Secondary node: You can only read data. • You can click the instance name to go to the **Basic Information** page. In the **Network Information** area, the port is displayed in the **Database Port** field and the node EIPs are displayed in **Node Information** area.

Figure 3-12 Obtaining connection information

Network Information							
VPC		Security Group	default 🖋				
Subnet		Database Port	8635 🎤				
IPv4 Address	mongodb://rwuser:****@		i/test?authSource	e=admin&replicaSet=replica			
Node Information							
Delete Node Add Node							
Name/ID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	EIP	Operation	
	Secondary	Available	azZ	IPv4:	1)	View Metric Unbind EIP	
	Primary	 Available 	az2	IPv4:	Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP	
	Secondary	Available	az2	IPv4	Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP	

• Alternatively, click the target instance. On the displayed **Basic Information** page, click **Connections** in the navigation pane on the left. Obtain the port and EIP on the **Connections** page.

Figure 3-13 Viewing EIPs

Basic Information							
Database Port	8635 🍬			VPC			
SSL		Disabled 土 Update Certificate					
Address							
Access Across CIDR Blocks Disabled Enable							
IPv4 Address	I Address mongodb://rwuser.****@				'test?authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica		
Name/ID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	EIP	Operation	
	Secondary	Available	az2	IPv4:	11 39	Unbind EIP	
	Primary	Available	az2	IPv4:	Our Unbound	Bind EIP	
	Secondary	 Available 	az2	IPv4:	Our Unbound	Bind EIP	

Step 2 Run the installed Robo 3T. On the displayed dialog box, click **Create**.
🛃 MongoDB Connections			×
<u>Create</u> , <u>edit</u> , <u>remove</u> , <u>clone</u>	or reorder connections via drag':	n' drop.	
Nome	Address	Attributor Auth Databara / Mean	
Hane	YUT 52	Attributes Autic Database / Oser	
			1
		<u> </u>	ancer

Figure 3-14 Connections

- **Step 3** In the **Connection Settings** dialog box, set the parameters of the new connection.
 - 1. On the **Connection** tab, enter the name of the new connection in the **Name** text box and enter the EIP and database port that are bound to the replica set instance in the **Address** text box.

Figure 3-15 Connection

Connection	Authentication SSH TLS Advanced
Туре:	Direct Connection
Name:	test
ddrore :	: 8635
nuur ess.	Specify host and port of MongoDB server. Host can be either
NUU ESS.	Specify host and port of MongoDB server. Host can be either IPv4, IPv6 or domain name.

2. On the **Authentication** tab, set **Database** to **admin**, **User Name** to **rwuser**, and **Password** to the administrator password you set during the creation of the replica set instance.

Figure 3-16 Authentication

Connection Se	ettings	×
Connection	Authentication SSH TLS Advanced	
🗹 Perform aut	hentication	
Database	admin	
	The admin database is unique in MongoDB. Users with	
User Name	rwuser	
Password	<u>کې</u>	
Auth Mechanism	SCRAM-SHA-1	/
	ecify visible databases	_
1 Iest	Save Cancel	

3. Click the **TLS** tab, select **Use TLS protocol**, set **Authentication Method** to **Use CA Certificate**, and upload the obtained SSL certificate.

Figure 3-17 SSL

📃 Connection Settings		×
Connection Authentic	ation SSH TLS Advanced	
🗹 Use TLS protocol		
Authentication Method:	Use CA Certificate	\sim
CA Certificate:	\ca. crt	
🗌 Use PEM Cert./Key:	Enable this option to connect to a MongoDB that requires CA-signed client certificates/key file.	
Advanced Options		
<u>I</u> est	Save Cance	1

4. Click **Save**.

Step 4 On the **MongoDB Connections** page, click **Connect** to connect to the replica set instance.

MongoDB Connections				×
<u>Create, edit, remove, clone</u> or	reorder connections via drag´n´	drop.		
Name	Address	Attributes	Auth. Database / User	
📃 test	:8635	TLS	🔎 admin / rwuser	
			📃 C <u>o</u> nnect 🛛 Can	cel

Figure 3-18 Replica set connection information

Step 5 If the replica set instance is successfully connected, the following page is displayed.

Figure 3-19 Connection succeeded





Non-SSL Connection

NOTICE

If you connect to an instance over an unencrypted connection, disable SSL first. Otherwise, an error is reported. For details about how to disable SSL, see **Configuring an SSL Connection**. **Step 1** Obtain the EIP and port of the replica set instance.

NOTE

Primary node: You can read and write data. Secondary node: You can only read data.

• You can click the instance name to go to the **Basic Information** page. In the **Network Information** area, the port is displayed in the **Database Port** field and the node EIPs are displayed in **Node Information** area.

Figure 3-20	Obtaining	connection	information
-------------	-----------	------------	-------------

Network Information						
VPC		Security Group	default 🖋			
Subnet		Database Port	8635 🥒			
IPv4 Address	mongodb://rwuser:****@		/test?authSourc	e=admin&replicaSet=replica 🖒		
Node Information						
Delete Node A	Add Node					
Name/ID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	EIP	Operation
	Secondary	Available	azZ	IPv4:	- 1 ()	View Metric Unbind EIP
	Primary	Available	azZ	IPv4:	S Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP
	Secondary	Available	az2	IPv4	Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP

• Alternatively, click the target instance. On the displayed **Basic Information** page, click **Connections** in the navigation pane on the left. Obtain the port and EIP on the **Connections** page.

Figure 3-21 Viewing EIPs

Basic Information	on					
Database Port	8635 🖉			VPC		
SSL		Disabled 🛓 Update	e Certificate	Subnet		
Address						
Access Across CIDF	R Blocks Disabled	Enable				
IPv4 Address	mongodb:	//rwuser:****@			'test?authSource=	admin&replicaSet=replica 🗇
Name/ID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	EIP	Operation
	Secondary	Available	az2	IPv4:	11 39	Unbind EIP
	Primary	Available	az2	IPv4: 1	Our Unbound	Bind EIP
	Secondary	Available	az2	IPv4:	Outpound	Bind EIP

Step 2 Run the installed Robo 3T. On the displayed dialog box, click **Create**.

Figure 3-22 Connections

MongoDB Connections					×
Create, edit, remove, clone or	reorder connections via drag'n'	dr op.			
Name	Address	Attributes	Auth.	Database / Vs	ser
			[📃 C <u>o</u> nnect	Cancel

- **Step 3** In the **Connection Settings** dialog box, set the parameters of the new connection.
 - 1. On the **Connection** tab, specify the connection name in **Name** and enter the EIP and port of the replica set instance obtained in **Step 1** in **Address**.

Figure 3-23 Connection

Connection	Authentication SSH TLS Advanced
уре:	Direct Connection
lame:	test
ddress:	: 8635
	Specify host and port of MongoDB server. Host can be either IPv4, IPv6 or domain name.
	Specify host and port of MongoDB server. Host can be either IPv4, IPv6 or domain name.

2. On the **Authentication** tab, set **Database** to **admin**, **User Name** to **rwuser**, and **Password** to the administrator password you set during the creation of the replica set instance.

 \times

Figure	3-24	Authentication
--------	------	----------------

Connection Se	ettings	×
Connection	Authentication SSH TLS Advanced	
Database	admin The admin database is unique in MongoDB. Users with normal access to the admin database have read and write access to all databases .	
User Name	rwuser	
Password	<u>ه</u>	
Auth Mechanism	SCRAM-SHA-1	*
☐ Menuelly sp	ecify visible databases	-
i <u>T</u> est	Save Cancel	

- 3. Click Save.
- **Step 4** On the **MongoDB Connections** page, click **Connect** to connect to the replica set instance.

Figure 3-25 Connections						
🛃 MongoDB Connections						
<u>Create</u> , <u>edit</u> , <u>remove</u> , <u>clone</u>	or reorder (connections vi	a drag'n' drop.			
Name	Address		Attributes	Auth. Database / Us	er	
📃 replica	1(.78:8635		🔎 admin / rwuser		
				E Connect	Cancel	

Step 5 If the replica set instance is successfully connected, the page shown in **Figure 3-26** is displayed.



Figure 3-26 Connection succeeded

----End

3.3.3.2 Connecting to a Replica Set Instance Using the MongoDB Client

If a DB instance cannot be accessed over a private network, you can bind an EIP to the instance.

This section describes how to use the MongoDB client to connect to a replica set instance over a public network.

A Linux ECS is used as an example.

The MongoDB client can connect to an instance with an unencrypted connection or an encrypted connection (SSL). To improve data transmission security, you are advised to connect to instances using the SSL connection.

Prerequisites

- 1. You have bound an EIP to the instance and configured security group rules. In this way, you can access the instance from the ECS. For details, see **Binding and Unbinding an EIP** and **Configuring Security Group Rules**.
- 2. Install the MongoDB client.
 - a. You have created and logged in to an ECS. For details, see **Purchasing an ECS** and **Logging In to an ECS**.
 - b. You have installed the MongoDB client on the ECS.
 - For details about how to install the MongoDB client, see How Can I Install a MongoDB Client?

SSL Connection

NOTICE

If you connect to an instance over the SSL connection, enable SSL first. Otherwise, an error is reported. For details about how to enable SSL, see **Configuring an SSL Connection**.

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instance Management** page, click the instance.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Connections**.
- **Step 5** In the **Basic Information** area, click $\stackrel{d}{\rightharpoonup}$ next to the **SSL** field to download the root certificate.
- **Step 6** Upload the root certificate to the ECS to be connected to the instance.

The following describes how to upload the certificate to a Linux and a Window ECS

 In Linux, run the following command: scp<IDENTITY_FILE><REMOTE_USER>@<REMOTE_ADDRESS>:<REMOTE_DIR>

- **IDENTITY_FILE** is the directory where the root certificate resides. The file access permission is 600.
- **REMOTE_USER** indicates the OS user.
- **REMOTE_ADDRESS** indicates the host address.
- **REMOTE_DIR** indicates the directory to which the root certificate is uploaded.
- In Windows, upload the root certificate using a remote connection tool.
- Step 7 Connect to the DB instance in the directory where the MongoDB client is located.

Example command:

./mongo --host <DB_HOST> --port <DB_PORT> -u <DB_USER> -p -authenticationDatabaseadmin --ssl --sslCAFile<FILE_PATH> -sslAllowInvalidHostnames

Enter the password of the database account if the following information is displayed:

Enter password:

Parameter	Description					
<db_host></db_host>	EIP bound to the instance node to be connected.					
	Primary node: You can read and write data.					
	Secondary node: You can only read data.					
	On the Instance Management page, click the instance to go to the Basic Information page. On the Connections page, obtain the EIP of the corresponding node.					
	Figure 3-27 Obtaining the EIP of a Node					
	Access Across CIDR Blocks Disabled Enable					
	IPv4 Address mongodb:/invuser.***@ /hest?authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica					
	NameID Role Status AZ Private IP Address EIP Operation					
	Secondary O Available az2 IPv4: 1 Unbind EIP					
	Primary O Available az2 IPv4: O Unbound Bind EIP					
	Secondary 🕥 Available az2 IPv4: 💿 Unbound Bind EIP					
	Alternatively, click the instance name and obtain the EIP of the corresponding node in the Node Information area.					
<db_port></db_port>	Database port					
<db_user></db_user>	Username of the instance administrator. The default value is rwuser .					
<file_path></file_path>	Path for storing the root certificate.					

Table 3-14 Parameter description

Example:

./mongo --host 192.168.1.6 --port 8635 -u rwuser -p --authenticationDatabase admin --ssl --sslCAFile /tmp/ca.crt --sslAllowInvalidHostnames

- **Step 8** Check the results. If the following information is displayed, the connection is successful.
 - The primary node of the replica set is connected. replica:PRIMARY>
 - The standby node of the replica set is connected.

replica:SECONDARY>

----End

Non-SSL Connection

NOTICE

If you connect to an instance over an unencrypted connection, disable SSL first. Otherwise, an error is reported. For details about how to disable SSL, see **Configuring an SSL Connection**.

- **Step 1** Connect the ECS.
- **Step 2** Connect to the instance.

Example command:

./mongo --host <DB_HOST> --port <DB_PORT> -u <DB_USER> -p -authenticationDatabase admin

Parameter	Description				
<db_host></db_host>	EIP of the primary or standby node of the instance to be connected.				
	Primary node: You can read and write data.				
	• Secondary node: You can only read data.				
	On the Instance Management page, click the instance to go to the Basic Information page. Obtain the EIP of the corresponding node from the node information list.				
	Figure 3-29 Obtaining an EIP				
	Node Information Dates Index Ad Node				
	NormetD Role States AZ Private IP Address EIP Operation Secondary Secondary Available au2 Pvie 1 Veer Mark: District EIP				
	Primary Australia ec2 Pr4 O Undourd Verw Maric Bref 2P				
	Secondary 🔷 Avabaliv az P-4 🗢 Urbanned Vans Mark: End EP				
	Alternatively, click the target instance to go to the Basic Information page. In the navigation pane on the left, choose Connections . On the Connections page, obtain the EIP of the node. Figure 3-30 Obtaining the EIP of a node				
	Address				
	IPv4 Address mongodb/Invuser****@//test?authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica 🗇				
	NamelID Role Status AZ Private IP Address EIP Operation				
	Secondary 🕥 Available az2 IPv4: 1 Unbind EIP				
	Primany SAvailable az2 IPv4: SUnbound Bind EIP				
	Secondary Available az2 IPv4: S Unbound Bind EIP				
<db_port></db_port>	Database port				
<db_user></db_user>	Username of the instance administrator. The default value is rwuser .				

Table 3-15 Parameter description

Enter the password of the database account if the following information is displayed:

Enter password:

Example:

./mongo --host 192.168.1.6 --port 8635 -u rwuser -p --authenticationDatabase admin

Step 3 Check the results. If the following information is displayed, the connection is successful.

- The primary node of the replica set is connected. replica:PRIMARY>
- The standby node of the replica set is connected. replica:SECONDARY>

----End

3.4 Getting Started with Common Practices

After purchasing and connecting to an instance, you can view common practices to better use GeminiDB Mongo.

Table 3-16 Common practices

Practice		Description		
Usage rules	Naming Rules	This section describes the naming conventions of GeminiDB Mongo API.		
	Indexing Rules	This section describes the index specifications of GeminiDB Mongo API.		
Instan ce modif	Modifying the Name of an Instance	This section describes how to change an instance name to identify different instances.		
ns	Resetting the Administrator Password	For security reasons, regularly change your administrator password.		
	Changing Specifications of an Instance	Describes how to change the CPU or memory of your instance to suit your service requirements.		
Data backu p	Managing Automated Backups	Describes how GeminiDB Mongo API automatically creates backups for a DB instance during a backup window and saves the backups based on the configured retention period.		
	Managing Manual Backups	Describes how to create manual backups for a DB instance. These backups can be used to restore data for improved reliability.		
Data restor ation	Restoring Data to a New or Existing Instance	This practice describes how to restore an existing automated or manual backup to a new or existing instance. The restored data is the same as the backup data.		
Log mana geme nt	Slow Query Logs	GeminiDB Mongo API allows you to view slow query logs of databases. The unit of the execution time is ms. You can identify the SQL statements that take a long time to execute and tune them based on slow query logs.		

Practice		Description	
	Error Logs	GeminiDB Mongo API allows you to view error ogs of databases, including warning logs and error logs generated during database running, helping you analyze system issues.	

4 Working with GeminiDB Mongo API

4.1 Permissions Management

4.1.1 Creating a User Group and Assigning Permissions

This section describes how to use **IAM** to control fine-grained permissions for your GeminiDB resources. With IAM, you can:

- Create IAM users for employees based on your enterprise's organizational structure. Each IAM user will have their own security credentials for accessing GeminiDB resources.
- Grant only the permissions required for users to perform a specific task.
- Entrust a Huawei Cloud account or cloud service to perform efficient O&M on your GeminiDB resources.

If your Huawei Cloud account does not require individual IAM users, skip this section.

The following describes the procedure for granting permissions (see Figure 4-1).

Prerequisites

Learn about the permissions supported by GeminiDB and choose policies or roles based on your requirements. For details about the permissions, see **Permissions Management**. For system policies of other services, see **Permissions Policies**.

Process Flow



Figure 4-1 Process of granting GeminiDB permissions

1. Create a user group and assign permissions to it.

Create a user group on the IAM console and attach the **GeminiDB FullAccess** policy to the group.

2. Create an IAM user.

Create a user on the IAM console and add the user to the group created in 1.

3. Log in and verify permissions.

Log in to the management console using the created user, and verify that the user only has read permissions.

Choose **Service List** > **GeminiDB** and click **Buy DB Instance**. If you can buy an instance, the required permission policy has taken effect.

4.1.2 Creating a Custom Policy

Custom policies can be created to supplement the system-defined policies of GeminiDB. For the actions supported for custom policies, see **Permissions Policies and Supported Actions**.

You can create custom policies in either of the following ways:

- Visual editor: Select cloud services, actions, resources, and request conditions. This does not require knowledge of policy syntax.
- JSON: Edit JSON policies from scratch or based on an existing policy.

For details, **Creating a Custom Policy**. The following contains examples of common GeminiDB custom policies.

Example Custom Policy

• Example 1: Allowing users to create GeminiDB instances

```
{
    "Version": "1.1",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "nosql:instance:create"
            ]
        }
]
```

• Example 2: Deny users the permission to delete GeminiDB instances.

A policy with only "Deny" permissions must be used in conjunction with other policies to take effect. If the policies assigned to a user contain both Allow and Deny actions, the Deny actions take precedence over the Allow actions.

The following method can be used if you need to assign permissions of the **GeminiDB FullAccess** policy to a user but you want to prevent the user from deleting GeminiDB instances. Create a custom policy for denying GeminiDB instance deletion, and attach both policies to the group to which the user belongs. Then, the user can perform all operations on GeminiDB instances except deleting GeminiDB instances. The following is an example of the deny policy:

```
{
    "Version": "1.1",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Deny"
            "Action": [
                "nosql:instance:delete"
            ],
        }
    ]
}
```

• Example 3: Defining permissions for multiple services in a policy

A custom policy can contain the actions of multiple services that are of the global or project-level type. The following is an example policy containing actions of multiple services:

4.2 Migrating Data

4.2.1 Migration Scheme Overview

GeminiDB Mongo provides multiple migration schemes to migrate MongoDB databases in different service scenarios.

Scenario	Migration Type	References
Migrating MongoDB databases using export and import tools	Full	 Migrating Data Using mongoexport and mongoimport
		 Migrating Data Using mongodump and mongorestore
Migrating MongoDB databases using DRS	Full +incremental	Migrating Data Using DRS

 Table 4-1 Migration schemes

4.2.2 Migrating Data Using DRS

Data Replication Service (DRS) helps migrate your databases to GeminiDB Mongo instances. During the database migration, the source remains operational even if a transfer is interrupted, thereby minimizing application downtime.

For details, see **Real-Time Migration**.

4.2.3 Migrating Data Using mongoexport and mongoimport

mongoexport and mongoimport are backup and restoration tools provided by the MongoDB client. You can install a MongoDB client on the local device or ECS and use the mongoexport and mongoimport tools to migrate your on-premises MongoDB databases or other cloud MongoDB databases to GeminiDB Mongo instances.

Before migrating data from a MongoDB database to GeminiDB Mongo, transfer data to a .json file using the mongoexport tool. Then, log in to the ECS or a device that can access GeminiDB Mongo and import data to GeminiDB Mongo using mongoimport.

Precautions

- mongoexport and mongoimport support only full migration. To ensure data consistency, stop services on the source database and stop writing data to the source database before the migration.
- You are advised to perform the migration during off-peak hours to avoid the impact of migration on your services.

- The admin and local system databases cannot be migrated.
- Make sure that no service set has been created in the system databases admin and local in the source database. If there is already a service set, migrate them out of the system databases admin and local before migration.
- Before importing data, ensure that the necessary indexes are there on the source database. Delete any unnecessary indexes and create any necessary indexes before migration.
- If you choose to migrate a sharded cluster, you must create a set of shards in the destination database and configure sharding. In addition, indexes must be created before migration.

Prerequisites

- 1. An ECS or a device that can access GeminiDB Mongo is ready for use.
 - To connect to a GeminiDB Mongo instance over a private network from an ECS, create and log in to the ECS. For details, see Purchasing an ECS and Logging In to an ECS
 - To connect to an instance through an EIP, you must:
 - i. For details on how to bind an EIP, see **Binding and Unbinding an EIP**.
 - ii. Ensure that your local device can access the EIP.
- 2. A migration tool has been installed on the prepared ECS.

Install the migration tool. For details, see **How Can I Install a MongoDB Client?**

NOTE

The MongoDB client provides the mongoexport and mongoimport tools.

Exporting Data

- Step 1 Log in to the ECS or the device that can access GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 2** Use the mongoexport tool to transfer data from the source database to a .json file.

An SSL connection is used as an example. If you select an unencrypted connection, delete --ssl --sslAllowInvalidCertificates from the following command.

./mongoexport --host <DB_ADDRESS> --port <DB_PORT> --ssl -sslAllowInvalidCertificates --type json --authenticationDatabase <AUTH_DB> u <DB_USER> --db <DB_NAME> --collection <DB_COLLECTION> --out
<DB_PATH>

Table 4-2 Param	eter description
-----------------	------------------

Parameter	Description
DB_ADDRESS	Database address
DB_PORT	Database port

Parameter	Description
AUTH_DB	Database that stores <i>DB_USER</i> information. Generally, the value is admin .
DB_USER	Database user
DB_NAME	The name of the database to be migrated.
DB_COLLECTION	The collection of the database to be migrated.
DB_PATH	Path of storing the JSON file

Enter the database administrator password when prompted:

Enter password:

The following is an example. After the command is executed, the **exportfile.json** file will be generated:

./mongoexport --host 192.168.1.21 --port 8635 --ssl -sslAllowInvalidCertificates --type json --authenticationDatabase admin -u rwuser --db test02 --collection Test --out /tmp/mongodb/export/ exportfile.json

Step 3 Check the results.

If information similar to the following is displayed, the data is successfully exported. \mathbf{x} is the number of exported data records.

exported x records

Step 4 Compress the exported .json file.

gzip exportfile.json

Compressing the file helps reduce the time needed to transmit all the data. The compressed file is **exportfile.json.gz**.

----End

Importing Data

- Step 1 Log in to the ECS or the device that can access GeminiDB Mongo.
- **Step 2** Upload the data to be imported to the ECS or the device that can access GeminiDB Mongo.

Select an uploading method based on the OS you are using.

- In Linux, for example, you can use secure copy protocol (SCP): scp </DENTITY_FILE> <REMOTE_USER>@<REMOTE_ADDRESS>:<REMOTE_DIR>
 - **IDENTITY_FILE** indicates the directory where the **exportfile.json.gz** file is located. The file access permission is 600.
 - **REMOTE_USER** is the ECS OS user.

- **REMOTE_ADDRESS** is the ECS address.
- REMOTE_DIR is the directory of the ECS to which the exportfile.json.gz file is uploaded.
- In Windows, upload **exportfile.json.gz** to the ECS using file transfer tools.
- **Step 3** Decompress the package.

gzip -d exportfile.json.gz

Step 4 Import the JSON file to the GeminiDB Mongo database.

An SSL connection is used as an example. If you select an unencrypted connection, delete --ssl --sslAllowInvalidCertificates from the following command.

```
./mongoimport --host <DB_ADDRESS> --port <DB_PORT> --ssl --
sslAllowInvalidCertificates --type json --authenticationDatabase <AUTH_DB> -
u <DB_USER> --db <DB_NAME> --collection <DB_COLLECTION> --file
<DB_PATH>
```

Parameter	Description
DB_ADDRESS	IP address of the GeminiDB Mongo instance.
DB_PORT	Database port
AUTH_DB	The database that authenticates <i>DB_USER</i> . Generally, the value is admin .
DB_USER	Database administrator account
DB_NAME	Database to be imported
DB_COLLECTION	Collection in the database to be imported
DB_PATH	Path of storing the JSON file

Table 4-3 Parameter description

Enter the database administrator password when prompted:

Enter password:

Example:

./mongoimport --host 192.168.1.21 --port 8635 --ssl -sslAllowInvalidCertificates --type json --authenticationDatabase admin -u rwuser --db test02 --collection Test --file /tmp/mongodb/export/ exportfile.json

Step 5 Check the results.

If information similar to the following is displayed, the data is successfully migrated. \mathbf{x} is the number of imported data records.

imported x records

----End

4.2.4 Migrating Data Using mongodump and mongorestore

mongodump and mongorestore are backup and restoration tools provided by the MongoDB client. You can install a MongoDB client on the local device or ECS and use the mongodump and mongorestore tools to migrate your MongoDB databases or other cloud MongoDB databases to GeminiDB Mongo instances.

Precautions

- mongodump and mongorestore support only full migration. To ensure data consistency, stop services on the source database and stop writing data to the source database before the migration.
- You are advised to perform the migration during off-peak hours to avoid impacting services.
- The admin and local system databases cannot be migrated.
- Make sure that no service set has been created in the system databases admin and local in the source database. If there is already a service set, migrate them out of the system databases admin and local before migration.
- Before importing data, ensure that the necessary indexes are there on the source database. Delete any unnecessary indexes and create any necessary indexes before migration.
- If you choose to migrate a sharded cluster, you must create a set of shards in the destination database and configure sharding. In addition, indexes must be created before migration.
- If the backup using the mongodump tool fails (for example, an error is reported when the backup progress reaches 97%), you are advised to increase the VM storage space and reserve some redundant space before performing the backup again.
- User **rwuser** can only operate service database tables. You are advised to specify databases and tables to import and export only service data. Otherwise, the insufficient permission problem may occur during full import and export.

Prerequisites

- 1. Prepare an ECS or a device that can access GeminiDB Mongo.
 - To connect to a GeminiDB Mongo instance over a private network from an ECS, create and log in to the ECS. For details, see Purchasing an ECS and Logging In to an ECS
 - To connect to an instance through an EIP, you must:
 - i. For details on how to bind an EIP, see **Binding and Unbinding an EIP**.
 - ii. Ensure that your local device can access the EIP.
- 2. A migration tool has been installed on the prepared ECS or the device that can access GeminiDB Mongo.

Install the migration tool. For details, see **How Can I Install a MongoDB Client?**

D NOTE

- The mongodump and mongorestore tools are part of the MongoDB client installation package.
- The MongoDB client version must match the instance version. Otherwise, compatibility issues may occur.

Exporting Data

Step 1 Log in to the ECS or the device that can access GeminiDB Mongo API.

Step 2 Back up the source database data using mongodump.

• Example command for SSL connection:

./mongodump --host <DB_HOST> --port <DB_PORT> -authenticationDatabase <AUTH_DB> -u <DB_USER> --ssl --sslCAFile
<FILE_PATH> --sslAllowInvalidCertificates --db <DB_NAME> --collection
<DB_COLLECTION> --gzip --archive=<Backup_directory>

• Example command for unencrypted connection:

./mongodump --host <DB_HOST> --port <DB_PORT> -authenticationDatabase <AUTH_DB> -u <DB_USER> --db <DB_NAME> -collection <DB_COLLECTION> --gzip --archive=<Backup_directory>

Parameter	Description
DB_HOST	Database address
DB_PORT	Database port
DB_USER	Database username
AUTH_DB	Database that stores <i><db_user></db_user></i> information. Generally, the value is admin .
FILE_PATH	Path for storing the root certificate
DB_NAME	The name of the database to be migrated.
DB_COLLECTION	Collection in the database to be migrated
Backup_directory	Path for storing the exported data. You can customize the path.

 Table 4-4 Parameter description

Enter the database administrator password when prompted:

Enter password:

Example:

./mongodump --host 192.168.xx.xx --port 8635 --authenticationDatabase admin -u rwuser --db test --collection usertable --gzip --archive=/tmp/ usertable.tar.gz

[root@ecs-5602 bin]# ./mongodum ction usertablegziparchiv Enter password:	ıphost 192.168. [.]po ∕e=/tmp/usertable.tar.gz	ort 8635aut	henticationDatabase admir	-u rwuserdb testcoll
2022-01-06T20:44:12.696+0800 2022-01-06T20:44:14.596+0800 2022-01-06T20:44:14.860+0800 2022-01-06T20:44:14.933+0800	<pre>writing test.usertable to arc [] [##############################</pre>	hive '/tmp/use test.usertable test.usertable (100000 docume	rtable.tar.gz' 101/100000 (0.1%) 100000/100000 (100.0%) nts)	

----End

Importing Data

- **Step 1** Log in to the ECS or the device that can access GeminiDB Mongo.
- **Step 2** Upload the data to be imported to the ECS or the device that can access GeminiDB Mongo.

Select an uploading method based on the OS you are using.

 In Linux, for example, you can use secure copy protocol (SCP): scp -r <IDENTITY_DIR> <REMOTE_USER>@<REMOTE_ADDRESS>:<REMOTE_DIR>

Table 4-5 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
<identity_dir></identity_dir>	Directory where the backup folder is located.
<remote_user></remote_user>	User of the ECS OS
<remote_addres S></remote_addres 	ECS address
<remote_dir></remote_dir>	Directory of the file to be imported

• In Windows, use a transfer tool to upload the backup file to the ECS.

Step 3 Import the backup data to the GeminiDB Mongo instance.

- Example command for SSL connection:
 - ./mongorestore --host <DB_HOST> --port <DB_PORT> -authenticationDatabase <AUTH_DB> -u <DB_USER> --ssl --sslCAFile
 <FILE_PATH> --sslAllowInvalidCertificates --db <DB_NAME> --collection
 <DB_COLLECTION> --gzip --archive=<Backup_directory>
- Example command for unencrypted connection:

./mongorestore --host <DB_HOST> --port <DB_PORT> -authenticationDatabase <AUTH_DB> -u <DB_USER> --db <DB_NAME> -collection <DB_COLLECTION> --gzip --archive=<Backup_directory>

Table 4-6 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
DB_HOST	Database address
DB_PORT	Database port

Parameter	Description
AUTH_DB	The database that authenticates <i>DB_USER</i> . Generally, the value is admin .
DB_USER	Account name of the database administrator. The default value is rwuser .
FILE_PATH	Path for storing the root certificate
DB_NAME	Name of the database to which data is to be imported
DB_COLLECTION	Collection in the database to be imported
Backup_directory	Directory for storing backup files

Enter the database administrator password when prompted:

Enter password:

Example:

./mongorestore --host 192.168.xx.xx --port 8635 --authenticationDatabase admin -u rwuser --db test --collection usertable --gzip --archive=/tmp/ usertable.tar.gz

[root@ecs-5602 bin]# ./mongores ection usertablegziparchi Enter password:	torehost 192.168.JWL.^^port 8635authenticationDatabase admin -u rwuserdb testcoll ye=/tmp/usertable.tar.gz
2022-01-06T20:46:17.937+0800 deprecated and will not exist i 2022-01-06T20:46:17.947+0800 2022-01-06T20:46:17.966+0800 2022-01-06T20:46:18.244+0800 2022-01-06T20:46:19.714+0800 2022-01-06T20:46:19.714+0800 2022-01-06T20:46:19.714+0800	thedb andcollection args should only be used when restoring from a BSON file. Other uses are n the future; usensInclude instead preparing collections to restore from reading metadata for test.usertable from archive '/tmp/usertable.tar.gz' restoring test.usertable from archive '/tmp/usertable.tar.gz' no indexes to restore finished restoring test.usertable (100000 documents) done

----End

Related Issues

When you back up the entire instance using mongodump and mongorestore, the permission verification fails.

Cause

The **rwuser** user has limited permissions on the **admin** and **config** databases of the instance. As a result, the permission verification fails.

• Solution

Grant permissions on certain databases and tables to the user.

4.3 Instance Lifecycle

4.3.1 Restarting an Instance

Scenarios

You may need to occasionally restart a DB instance to perform routine maintenance.

Precautions

- If the instance status is **Available**, **Abnormal**, or **Checking restoration**, you can restart the instance.
- Restarting an instance will interrupt services, so exercise caution when performing this operation.
- If you restart an instance, all nodes in the instance are also restarted.
- If you enable operation protection to improve the security of your account and cloud products, two-factor authentication is required for sensitive operations. For details about how to enable operation protection, see *Identity* and Access Management User Guide.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** On the **Instance Management** page, locate the instance you want to restart and in the **Operation** column choose **Restart**.

Alternatively, click the target DB instance, and on the displayed **Basic Information** page, click **Restart** in the upper right corner of the page.

- Step 4 If you have enabled operation protection, click Start Verification in the Restart DB Instance dialog box. On the displayed page, click Send Code, enter the verification code, and click Verify. The page is closed automatically.
- Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, click Yes.

For GeminiDB Mongo instances, you can restart several nodes at the same time or in sequence based on service requirements.

>

Figure 4-2 Restarting the GeminiDB Mongo instance

Restart DB Instance		
Restart this instance?		
Restart all nodes at once Restart	nodes in sequence	
DB Instance Name	Status	
	Available	
Scheduled Time Immediate	During maintenance window	0
A This DB instance will not be available	when it is being restarted.	
	Ye	s No

----End

4.3.2 Deleting a Pay-per-Use Instance

Scenarios

You can choose to delete a pay-per-use instance on the **Instances** page based on service requirements. To delete a yearly/monthly instance, unsubscribe from it. For details, see **Unsubscribing from a Yearly/Monthly DB Instance**.

Precautions

- Instances that an operation is being performed on cannot be deleted. They can be deleted only after the operations are complete.
- If a pay-per-use instance is deleted, its automated backups will also be deleted and you will no longer be billed for them. Manual backups, however, will be retained and generate additional costs.
- After an instance is deleted, all its data and all automated backups are automatically deleted as well and cannot be recovered. Back up it before you delete an instance. For details, see **Creating a Manual Backup**.
- After you delete an instance, all of its nodes are deleted.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instance Management** page, locate the target instance and in the **Operation** column choose **Delete** or **More** > **Delete**.

Step 4 If you have enabled operation protection, click Start Verification in the Delete DB Instance dialog box. On the displayed page, click Send Code, enter the verification code, and click Verify. The page is closed automatically.

NOTE

If you enable operation protection, two-factor authentication is required for sensitive operations to secure your account and cloud products. For details about how to enable operation protection, see *Identity and Access Management User Guide*.

Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

Deleted DB instances are not displayed in the instance list.

----End

4.3.3 Recycling an Instance

GeminiDB Mongo API can move unsubscribed yearly/monthly instances and deleted pay-per-use DB instances to the recycle bin, so you can rebuild the DB instance and restore data from it.

Precautions

- If you delete an instance of full storage, the deleted instance will not be moved to the recycle bin.
- The recycling policy is enabled by default and cannot be disabled. Instances in the recycle bin are retained for 7 days by default, and this will not incur any charges.
- Currently, you can put up to 100 instances into the recycle bin. If the maximum number of instances is reached, you cannot put instances into the recycle bin anymore.
- You can modify the retention period, and the changes only apply to the DB instances deleted after the changes, so exercise caution when performing this operation.

Modifying the Recycling Policy

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Recycling Bin** page, click **Modify Recycling Policy**. In the displayed dialog box, set the retention period from 1 day to 7 days. Then, click **OK**.

Figure 4-3 Modifying the recycling policy

Modify Recy	cling Policy	~
Retention Period	─ 4 + days	
	You can change the retention period to between 1 and 7 days. The changes only apply to the DB instances deleted after the changes.	
	You can put up to 100 instances into the recycle bin. If the maximum number of instances is reached, you cannot put instances into the recycle bin anymore.	
	OK Cancel)

----End

Rebuilding an Instance

You can rebuild DB instances from the recycle bin within the retention period to restore data.

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Recycling Bin** page, locate the instance that you want to rebuild and click **Rebuild** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 4-4 Rebuilding an instance

Modify Recycling Policy							
DB Instance Name/ID	DB Instance Type	Compatible API	Billing Mode	Created	Deleted	Enterprise Project	Operation
1000	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0	Pay-per-use	Jul 01, 2024 17:19:29 GMT+0	Jul 01, 2024 20:50:08 GMT+0	default	Rebuild

Step 4 On the displayed page, set required parameters and submit the rebuilding task.

----End

4.4 Instance Modifications

4.4.1 Upgrading Patches

GeminiDB Mongo can be upgraded by installing patches to improve performance, release new features, or fix bugs.

After a new patch version involving performance improvement, new functions, or problem rectification is released for GeminiDB Mongo, you can upgrade your instance to the latest version at a proper time based on service requirements.

If a new patch is released, you can upgrade your instance by clicking the upgrade button in the **Compatible API** column on the **Instances** page, as shown in **Figure 4-5**.

Name/ID ≜	DBI	Instance Type	Compatible API	Status ≜	Enterprise Project	Billing Mode	Operation
 redis1111 1d46bad9 	nsti Prov	xy-based general pu	Redis 5.0	 Available 	default	Pay-per-use	Log In Change to Yearly/Monthly More 🕶
redis包用第 1d46bad9	Prox	xy-based general pu	Redis 5.0	Available	default	Yearly/Monthly 25 days until expiration	Log In Renew More 🕶
v nosql-53d 0a448be6	Clust	ster	Cassandra 1.0 Upgrade Minor Version	Available	default	Yearly/Monthly 25 days until expiration	Log In Renew More 👻
geminidb- cc5e81c40				Available	default	Pay-per-Use In arrears. 30 days until	Change to Yearly/Monthly Change Specifications M
cassandra 10a138cc§	Repl	lica set	MongoDB 4.0 Upgrade Minor Version	Available	default	Pay-per-use	Change to Yearly/Monthly Change Specifications M
geminidb- 220298d3	Clus	ster	InfluxDB 1.7	Scaling up cold storage	iaas-testing	Pay-per-Use Created on Feb 13, 202	Change to Yearly/Monthly Change Specifications M

Figure 4-5 Installing a patch

Precautions

- Upgrade your instance once there are new patches released.
- If the database version is a risky version, the system prompts you to upgrade the database patch.
- Upgrading the minor version of an instance will restart each node of the instance in sequence. When a node is being restarted, its services will be taken over by another node. Each takeover will interrupt services for 3 to 5 seconds. So, perform an upgrade during off-peak hours and enable automatic reconnection so that each node can be reconnected immediately after being restarted.
- Upgrading basic components takes about 15 minutes. Upgrading data components takes about 1 to 2 minutes, which depends on how many nodes there are.
- The instance will be restarted and services may be interrupted during the upgrade. The interruption duration depends on services, quantity of nodes, and the amount of service data. Upgrade your instance during off-peak hours.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 On the Instances page, locate the instance you want to upgrade and click Upgrade Minor Version in the Compatible API column.

Figure 4-6 Installing a patch

Name/ID ≑	DB Instance Type	Compatible API	Status ≑	Enterprise Project	Billing Mode	Operation
redis1111 1d46bad9	nsta Proxy-based general pu	Redis 5.0	Available	default	Pay-per-use	Log In Change to Yearly/Monthly More 🔻
redis包用} 1d46bad9	Proxy-based general pu	Redis 5.0	 Available 	default	Yearly/Monthly 25 days until expiration	Log In Renew More 🔻
nosql-53d Qa448be6	Cluster	Cassandra 1.0 Upgrade Minor Version	Available	default	Yearly/Monthly 25 days until expiration	Log In Renew More 🔻
geminidb- cc5e81c40			 Available 	default	Pay-per-Use In arrears, 30 days until	Change to Yearly/Monthly Change Specifications M
cassandra 10a138ccs	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0 Upgrade Minor Version	 Available 	default	Pay-per-use	Change to Yearly/Monthly Change Specifications M
geminidb-	Cluster	InfluxDB 1.7	Generation Scaling up cold storage	iaas-testing	Pay-per-Use Created on Feb 13, 202	Change to Yearly/Monthly Change Specifications M

Alternatively, click the instance name to go to the **Basic Information** page. In the **DB Information** area, click **Upgrade Minor Version** in the **Compatible API** field.

Figure 4-7 Installing a patch

DB Information			
Compatible API	MongoDB 4.0 Upgrade Minor Version	Specifications	1 vCPU 4 GB Change
Administrator	rwuser Reset Password	СРИ Туре	
SSL	Enabled 🕹		

Step 4 In the displayed dialog box, click **OK**.

Upgrade Minor Version

Figure 4-8 Confirming dialog box

Х

 Note: The instance will be restarted and services may be interrupted during the upgrade. The interruption duration depends on services, quantity of nodes, and the amount of service data. Upgrade your instance during off-peak hours. 						
DB Instance Name	Status					
	Available					

Step 5 View the upgrade result on the **Instances** page.

- When the upgrade is ongoing, the instance status is **Upgrading minor version**.
- After the upgrade is complete, the instance status changes **Available**.

----End

4.4.2 Modifying the Name of an Instance

Scenarios

This section describes how to change an instance name to identify different instances.

Method 1

Step 1 Log in to the management console.

Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.

- **Step 3** On the **Instance Management** page, click \checkmark to the right of the instance whose name you want to modify.
 - To submit the change, click **OK**.
 - To cancel the change, click **Cancel**.

NOTE

The instance name:

- Can be the same as an existing instance name.
- Can include 4 to 64 bytes and must start with a letter. It is case-sensitive and allows only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_).

Step 4 View the change results on the **Instances** page.

----End

Method 2

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose name you want to change and click its name.
- **Step 4** In the **Instance Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click \checkmark in the **DB Instance Name** field to change the instance name.
 - To submit the change, click
 - To cancel the change, click imes .
 - **NOTE**

The instance name:

- Can be the same as an existing instance name.
- Can include 4 to 64 bytes and must start with a letter. It is case-sensitive and allows only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_).
- **Step 5** View the results on the **Instance Management** page.

----End

4.4.3 Resetting the Administrator Password

Scenarios

For security reasons, regularly change your administrator password.

Precautions

• If the instance status is **Available**, **Backing up**, **Checking restoration**, **Scaling up** or certain nodes become abnormal, you can reset the administrator password.

• If you enable operation protection to improve the security of your account and cloud products, two-factor authentication is required for sensitive operations. For details about how to enable operation protection, see *Identity and Access Management User Guide*.

Method 1

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance you want to reset the password for and choose **More** > **Reset Password** in the **Operation** column.
- **Step 4** Enter and confirm the new administrator password and click **OK**.

The password must be 8 to 32 characters in length and contain uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and any of the following special characters: $\sim!@#\%^{*}-=+?$

Step 5 If you have enabled operation protection, click **Start Verification** in the displayed dialog box. On the displayed page, click **Send Code**, enter the verification code, and click **Verify**. The page is closed automatically.

----End

Method 2

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the instance. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.
- Step 4 In the DB Information area, click Reset Password in the Administrator field.
- **Step 5** Enter and confirm the new administrator password and click **OK**.

The password must be 8 to 32 characters in length and contain uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and any of the following special characters: $\sim!@#\%^{*}_{=}$ +?

Step 6 If you have enabled operation protection, click **Start Verification** in the displayed dialog box. On the displayed page, click **Send Code**, enter the verification code, and click **Verify**. The page is closed automatically.

----End

4.4.4 Scaling Up Storage Space

Scenarios

This section describes how to scale up the storage space of a DB instance to suit your service requirements.

During the scale-up process, the DB instance will not restart, and your services will not be interrupted.

Setting the Disk as Read-only When the Disk Space Is Full

To ensure that the GeminiDB Mongo instance can still be used if the storage space is about to be used up, the database is set as read-only, and data cannot be modified. If this happens, you can add more storage to restore the database to read/write status.

Table 4-7 Instance read-only upon rull storage	Table 4-7	Instance	read-only	upon	full	storage
---	-----------	----------	-----------	------	------	---------

Disk Space	Description	
Less than 600 GB	• When the disk usage reaches 97%, the DB instance status is set to read-only.	
	• When the disk usage decreases to 85%, the read- only state is automatically canceled for the DB instance.	
Greater than or equal to 600 GB	• The remaining disk space is less than 18 GB, and th DB instance status is set to read-only.	
	• If the remaining disk space is greater than or equal to 90 GB, the read-only state is automatically canceled for the DB instance.	

Precautions

- Storage space can only be scaled up.
- To view storage details on the **Instances** page, contact customer service.

Method 1

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the instance that you want to scale.
- **Step 4** In the **Storage Space** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Scale**.

Figure 4-9 Scaling up storage space

Storage Space



Used 0.00/100 GB

Step 5 On the displayed page, specify the new storage capacity and click **Next**.

Figure 4-10 Scaling up storage space

Scale Storage Space	0					
Current Configuratio	on					
DB Instance Name					Node Specifications	geminidb.mongodb.repset.large.4 2 vCPUs 8 GB
DB Instance ID					Current Nodes	3
Billing Mode	Yearly/Monthly				Storage	100 GB
Storage (GB)						
	101 GB					
	(11)					101 +
	100	240	360	480	600	

Select at least 1 GB each time you scale up the storage, and the storage size must be an integer.

Step 6 On the displayed page, confirm the storage space.

- For yearly/monthly instance
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page where you specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** and complete the payment.
- For pay-per-use instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page where you specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify the specifications, click **Submit** to scale up the storage space.

Step 7 Check the scaling-up result.

- The status of the DB instance in the instance list is **Scaling up**.
- After the scale up is completed, the instance status becomes **Available**.
- In the **Storage Space** area on the **Basic Information** page, check whether the scale up was successful.

----End

Method 2

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 On the Instance Management page, locate the instance whose storage space you want to scale up and choose More > Scale Storage Space in the Operation column.

Figure 4-11 Scaling up storage space

□ Name/ID ⊖		DB Instance	Compatible	Stor	Status 🖯	Specifications	Storage Space	:0	Load balan	Enterprise	Billing Mode	Operatio	n
	æ	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0		Available	2 vCPUs 3 nodes	0%	0/100GB	-	default	Yearly/Monthly 30 days until	Renew I	Enable Auto-Renewal More ~
													Change to Pay-per-Use
													Change Specifications
													Create Backup
													Scale Storage Space
													Add Node
													Restart
													Reset Password
													Unsubscribe

Step 4 On the displayed page, specify the new storage capacity and click **Next**.

Figure 4-12 Scaling up storage space

Scale Storage Space	0					
Current Configurati	on					
DB Instance Name					Node Specifications	geminidb.mongodb.repset.large.4 2 vCPUs 8 GB
DB Instance ID					Current Nodes	3
Billing Mode	Yearly/Monthly				Storage	100 GB
Storage (GB)	101 GB					
	(II) 100	240	360	480	600	101 +

Select at least 1 GB each time you scale up the storage, and the storage size must be an integer.

- **Step 5** On the displayed page, confirm the node configuration details.
 - For yearly/monthly DB instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page where you specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Next** and complete the payment.
 - For pay-per-use instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page where you specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click Submit to add the nodes.
- **Step 6** Check the scaling-up result.
 - The status of the DB instance in the instance list is **Scaling up**.
 - After the scale up is completed, the instance status becomes **Available**.
 - In the **Storage Space** area on the **Basic Information** page, check whether the scale up was successful.

----End

4.4.5 Changing Specifications of an Instance

Scenarios

This section describes how to change your instance specifications to suit your service requirements.

Precautions

- Instances can be scaled up or down by changing their specifications.
- If one instance has multiple nodes, the change will be performed on the nodes one by one. It takes about 5 to 10 minutes for each node, and the total time required depends on the number of the nodes.

- For a node whose specifications are being changed, its computing tasks are handed over to other nodes. Change specifications of nodes during off-peak hours to prevent the instance from overload.
- To view vCPUs and nodes on the **Instances** page, contact customer service.
- If you forcibly change the class of an abnormal node in a DB instance, services may be interrupted.

NOTE

To forcibly change the class of an abnormal node, submit a service ticket by choosing **Service Tickets** > **Create Service Ticket** in the upper right corner of the management console.

Method 1

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose specifications you want to change and click its name.
- Step 4 In the DB Information area, click Change in the Specifications field.

Figure 4-13 Changing specifications

DB Information			
Compatible API	MongoDB 4.0	Specifications	2 vCPUs 8 GB Change
Administrator	rwuser Reset Password	CPU Type	×86
SSL	Disabled 🗄 Update Certificate	Maintenance Window 🧿	10:00 - 14:00 Change

Step 5 On the displayed page, select the required specifications and click **Next**.

Figure 4-14 Changing specifications

Change Specifications 💿							
Current Configuration DB Instance Name DB Instance ID Billing Mode Yearly/Mert	19	Node Specifications Current Nodes Storage	pernota morpha veget large 4 2 x/P4/s 8 GB 3 100 GB				
New Specifications		reconnection, and change in the default values.	xCPU Memory 4xCPUs (14 Gen 4xCPUs (14 Ge 14xCPUs (14 Ge 2xCPUs (14 Ge 4xCPUs (12 Ge 4xCPUs (12 Ge 4xCPUs (12 Ge				
Scheduled Time	termelskite During maintenance window O						

Step 6 On the displayed page, confirm the specifications.

• For yearly/monthly instances
- If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page where you specify details.
- If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to change the specifications. If you are scaling up the specifications, go to the payment page, select a payment method, and complete the payment.
- For pay-per-use instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page where you specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click Submit to change the specifications.
- **Step 7** View the specifications change result.

Go to the **Basic Information** page and in the **DB Information** area you can see the new specifications.

----End

Method 2

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose specifications you want to change and choose **More** > **Change Specifications** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 4-15 Changing s	specifications
------------------------	----------------

Replica set MonguD2 4.3 Austacine 2 vCPUB 3 nodes 10 10008 default Varian/Adombit Reserv Extet Austacine Austacine Austacine Xector Xector	Name/ID 🕀		DB Instance	Compatible	Stor	Status 🖯	Specifications	Storage Space	>e	Load balan	Enterprise	Billing Mode	Operatio	n
Charge Separation Charge Separation Charge Separation Control Balance Scient Stratege Second Add Noon Restart Restart Restart Restart Restart		a	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0		 Available 	2 vCPUs 3 nodes	0%	0/100GB	-	default	Yearly/Monthly 30 days until	Renew	Enable Auto-Renewal More ~
														Change to Pay-per-Use Change Specifications Create Backup Scale Storage Space Add Node Restart Reset Password Unsubscribe

Step 4 On the displayed page, select the required specifications and click **Next**.

Figure 4-16 Changing specifications

Change Specifications ③			
Current Configuration			
DB Instance Name		Node Specifications	geminidb mongodb repoet large 4 2 vCPUs 8 GB
DB Instance ID		Current Nodes	3
Billing Mode Yearly/Mo	nthèy	Storage	100 GB
	Flavor Name		vCPU Memory
	gerninida mangoda repset xlarge. 4		4 vCPUs 18 GB
	gerninida mongoda repost 2xlarge 4		8 vCPUs 32 GB
	geminido mongodo repost Avlarge A		16 vCPUs 64 GB
New Specifications	geminidb.monpodb.repset.8xlarge.4		32 vCPUs 128 GB
	gerninidb mongodb repoet 16xlarge.4		64 vCPUs 256 GB
	Currently selected geminide mangade repset starge 4 4 vCPUs 16 GB		
	Services may be interrupted multiple times, for several seconds each time. Make sure that your client supports automatic	reconnection, and change in	stance specifications during off-peak hours. The time required depends on the number of instance nodes whose specifications are to be
	changed. Each node takes about 5 to 10 minutes.		
	After the instance class is changed, some associated parameters for the new instance class are automatically changed to	the default values.	
Scheduled Time	Immediate During maintenance window (2)		

Step 5 On the displayed page, confirm the specifications.

- For yearly/monthly instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page where you specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to change the specifications. If you are scaling up the specifications, go to the payment page, select a payment method, and complete the payment.
- For pay-per-use instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page where you specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click Submit to change the specifications.
- **Step 6** View the specifications change result.

Go to the **Basic Information** page and in the **DB Information** area you can see the new specifications.

----End

4.4.6 Changing a Maintenance Window

The default maintenance window is 10:00–14:00 (GMT+08:00) but you can change it if needed. To prevent service interruption, set the maintenance window to off-peak hours. Before calling this API:

Precautions

- This function for setting an maintenance window is still in the open beta test (OBT) phase. To use it, contact customer service.
- You can configure a maintenance window only for restarting a DB instance, changing an instance class, or upgrading the minor version of a DB instance.
- The specification change and patch upgrade that have been performed during the maintenance period cannot be performed immediately. The instance can be restarted immediately.
- You can cancel a task to be executed.
- Changing the maintenance window will not affect the timing that has already been scheduled.
- The maintenance window cannot overlap the time window configured for backups. Otherwise, scheduled tasks may fail.
- During the maintenance window, the scheduled task is scanned and executed every 10 minutes. If the task is delivered near the end of the maintenance period, the task may fail to be scanned and the execution is canceled.

Changing a Maintenance Window

Step 1 Log in to the management console.

Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.

Х

- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the instance whose specifications you want to change. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** On the **Bacis Information** page, locate **Maintenance Window** and click **Change**.

Figure 4-17 The change button

DB Information			
Compatible API	MongoDB 4.0	Specifications	2 vCPUs 8 GB Change
Administrator	rwuser Reset Password	CPU Type	×86
SSL	Disabled 🛃 Update Certificate	Maintenance Window 🧿	10:00 - 14:00 Change

Step 5 On the **Change Maintainable Window** page, select the maintenance time period as needed, and then click **OK**.

Supported time periods: 02:00-06:00, 06:00-10:00, 10:00-14:00, 14:00-18:00, 18:00-22:00, and 22:00-02:00

Figure 4-18 Changing a maintenance window

Change Maintenance Window

Time Zone	GMT+08:00
Maintenance Window	10:00 - 14:00 ~
	▲ Changing the maintenance window will not affect the execution of scheduled tasks in the original maintenance window.
	OK Cancel

Step 6 Check the result.

On the **Basic Information** page, you can view the changed maintenance window.

----End

Canceling a Scheduled Task

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Task Center** page, locate a scheduled task, and click **Cancel** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 4-19 Canceling a task

nstant Tasks Scheduled Tasks									
. Select one or more litters from the pop-up lists. If you enter a keyword without a litter applied, the system will search for all instance id matching this keyword.									
Task Name/Task ID	Status	DB Instance Name1D	Compatible API	Created	Execution Time Period (GMT+08:00)	Operation			
Changing a DB instance class fd458d2d-bd8e-4343-86e2-6fdc91997ed	C To be executed		MongoDB	Jun 28, 2024 17:02:04 GMT+08:00	Jun 29, 2024 10:00:00 - Jun 29, 2024 14:00:00	Cancel			

Step 4 Check the result.

On the **Task Center** page, you can view the result. After the task is cancelled, its status changes to **Cancelled**.

Figure 4-20 Checking cancelled tasks

Instant Tasks	Scheduled Tasks								
Q. Select one or n	Q. Select one or more filters from the pop-up lists. If you enter a keyword without a filter applied, the system will search for all instance id matching this keyword.								
Task Name/Task II	D	Status	DB Instance Name/ID	Compatible API	Created	Execution Time Period (GMT+08:00)	Operation		
Changing a DB inst fd458d2d-bd8e-434	tance class 43-86e2-6fcfc91997ed	Canceled		MongoDB	Jun 28, 2024 17:02:04 GMT+08:00	Jun 29, 2024 10:00:00 - Jun 29, 2024 14:00:00	-		

----End

4.4.7 Adding Nodes

Scenarios

This section describes how to add nodes to a DB instance to suit your service requirements. You can also delete a node as required. For details, see **Deleting Nodes**.

Precautions

- GeminiDB Mongo allows you to add nodes only to 4.0 replica set instances. The role of each new node is Readonly.
- Adding nodes may lead to the decrease of OPS. You are advised to perform this operation during off-peak hours.
- You can only add nodes when the instance status is **Available** or **Checking restoration**.
- An instance cannot be deleted when one or more nodes are being added.
- If the storage is insufficient, adding nodes is not supported. Expand the storage first. For details about the storage supported by instances of different specifications, see **Instance Specifications**.

Method 1

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the target DB instance.
- Step 4 In the Node Information area on the Basic Information page, click Add Node.

Figure 4-21	Node information
-------------	------------------

Node Information						
Delete Node Add Node						
Name/ID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	EIP	Operation
	Secondary	Available	822		Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP
	Primary	 Available 	822		Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP
	Secondary	Available	az2		Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP

Step 5 Specify Add Nodes and click Next.

Figure 4-22 Add Node

Add Node 📀	
DB Instance Name	
DB Instance ID	
Node Specifications	2 vCPUs 8 GB
Current Nodes	3
New Nodes	- 1 + You can add 12 more nodes. The total quota is 13.
	Required IP addresses: 1 Available IP addresses in the current subnet: 206
	Note Adding nodes may reduce the number of operations per second (OPS). Add nodes during off-peak hours.
Total Nodes	4

New nodes are of the same specifications as existing nodes. Once a new node is added, its specifications cannot be changed.

Step 6 On the displayed page, confirm the node configuration details.

- For yearly/monthly DB instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page where you specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Next** and complete the payment.
- For pay-per-use instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page where you specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click Submit to add the nodes.

Step 7 View the result of adding nodes.

- The status of the DB instance in the instance list is **Adding node**.
- After the nodes are added, the DB instance status becomes **Available**.
- Click the DB instance name. In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, view the information about the new nodes.

----End

Method 2

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 On the Instance Management page, locate the instance you want to add nodes for and choose More > Add Node in the Operation column.



Figure 4-23 Adding nodes

Step 4 Specify Add Nodes and click Next.

Figure 4-24 Add Node

Add Node 🕜	
DB Instance Name	
DB Instance ID	
Node Specifications	2 vCPUs 8 GB
Current Nodes	3
New Nodes	- 1 + You can add 12 more nodes. The total quota is 13. Required IP addresses: 1 Available IP addresses in the current subnet: 206
	Note Adding nodes may reduce the number of operations per second (OPS). Add nodes during off-peak hours.
Total Nodes	4

New nodes are of the same specifications as existing nodes. Once a new node is added, its specifications cannot be changed.

Step 5 On the displayed page, confirm the node configuration details.

- For yearly/monthly DB instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page where you specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click Next and complete the payment.
- For pay-per-use instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page where you specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click Submit to add the nodes.

Step 6 View the result of adding nodes.

- The status of the DB instance in the instance list is **Adding node**.
- After the nodes are added, the DB instance status becomes **Available**.

• Click the DB instance name. In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, view the information about the new nodes.

----End

4.4.8 Deleting Nodes

Scenarios

You can delete nodes that are no longer used to release resources.

Precautions

- GeminiDB Mongo allows you to delete nodes only from 4.0 replica set instances. The role of each node to be deleted is Readonly.
- Nodes cannot be deleted from yearly/monthly DB instances.
- Deleted nodes cannot be recovered. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- If you enable operation protection to improve the security of your account and cloud products, two-factor authentication is required for sensitive operations. For details about how to enable operation protection, see *Identity and Access Management User Guide*.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the target DB instance.
- **Step 4** In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, locate the target node and click **Delete**.

Figure 4-25 Node information

Node Information										
Delete Node Add Node										
Name/ID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	EIP	Operation				
	Primary	Available	az2	IPv4:	S Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP				
	Secondary	Available	az2	IPv4:	S Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP				
	Secondary	Available	az2	IPv4:	Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP				
	Readonly	Available	az2	IPv4:	Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP Delete				

- Step 5 If you have enabled operation protection, click Start Verification in the Delete Node dialog box. On the displayed page, click Send Code, enter the verification code, and click Verify. The page is closed automatically.
- **Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.
 - The status of the DB instance in the instance list is **Deleting node**.
 - After the deletion, the DB instance status becomes **Available**.

----End

4.4.9 Managing Tags

Scenarios

Tag Management Service (TMS) enables you to use tags on the management console to manage resources. TMS works with other cloud services to manage tags. TMS manages tags globally and other cloud services manage their own tags.

Adding tags to GeminiDB Mongo resources helps you better identify and manage them. A DB instance can be tagged during or after it is created.

After a DB instance is tagged, you can search for the tag key or value to quickly query the instance details.

Precautions

- You are advised to set predefined tags on the TMS console.
- A tag consists of a key and value. You can add only one value for each key. For details about the naming rules of tag keys and tag values, see **Table 4-8**.
- By default, each instance supports up to 10 tags. To use more tags, contact customer service to apply for a quota of 20 tags.
- The tag name must comply with the naming rules described in Table 4-8.

Parameter	Requirement	Example Value
Tag key	Cannot be left blank.	Organization
	• Must be unique for each instance.	
	 Contains a maximum of 36 characters. 	
	 Can only consist of digits, letters, underscores (_), and hyphens (-). 	
Tag value	Can be left blank.	nosql_01
	 Contains a maximum of 43 characters. 	
	 Can only consist of digits, letters, underscores (_), periods (.), and hyphens (-). 	

Table 4-8 Naming rules

Adding a Tag

Step 1 Log in to the management console.

- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the instance. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Tags**.

- **Step 5** On the **Tags** page, click **Add Tag**. In the displayed dialog box, enter a tag key and value, and click **OK**.
- **Step 6** View and manage the tag on the **Tags** page.

----End

Editing a Tag

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the instance. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Tags**.
- **Step 5** On the **Tags** page, locate the tag to be edited and click **Edit** in the **Operation** column. In the displayed dialog box, change the tag value and click **OK**.

Only the tag value can be edited.

Step 6 View and manage the tag on the **Tags** page.

----End

Deleting a Tag

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the instance. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Tags**.
- **Step 5** On the **Tags** page, locate the tag to be deleted and click **Delete** in the **Operation** column. In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.
- **Step 6** View that the tag is no longer displayed on the **Tags** page.

----End

Search by Tag

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 On the Instances page, select Tags in the search box.

Figure 4-26 Selecting tags				
Q	Select one or more filters from th	e pop-u		
sta	Property	\Leftrightarrow		
	Instance name			
	Compatible API			
	Instance ID			
	Connection IP address			
	Billing Mode			
	Tags			

Step 4 Select the tag to be queried and click **OK** to query information about instances associated with the tag.

Figure 4-27 Searching by tag

Q Tag	s:Add filter	
	(Select all)	
	✓ tag_key_2024060709543	
	aa = aa	ng
	aa = bb	
	a = a	abl
	cc = cc	
	Cancel OK	abl

----End

4.4.10 Updating the OS of an Instance

To improve database performance and security, the OS of a GeminiDB Mongo instance needs to be updated in a timely manner.

Every time you upgrade the kernel version of your instance, GeminiDB Mongo determines whether to update the OS and selects the right cold patch to upgrade the OS if necessary.

Updating the OS does not change the DB instance version or other information.

In addition, GeminiDB Mongo installs hot patches as required to fix major OS vulnerabilities within the maintenance window you specified.

4.5 Connections

4.5.1 Configuring Security Group Rules

A security group is a collection of access control rules for ECSs and GeminiDB Mongo instances that have the same security protection requirements and are mutually trusted in a VPC.

This section describes how to create a security group to enable specific IP addresses and ports to access GeminiDB Mongo API.

This section describes how to configure security group rules when you connect to a GeminiDB Mongo instance through a private or public network.

Precautions

- By default, you can create up to 500 security group rules.
- Too many security group rules will increase the first packet latency, so a maximum of 50 rules for each security group is recommended.
- One security group can be associated with only one GeminiDB Mongo instance.
- For details about how to configure security group rules, see Table 4-9.

Table 4-9 Parameter description

Scenario	Description		
Connecting to an	Check whether the ECS and GeminiDB Mongo instance are in the same security group.		
instance over a private network	 If the ECS and GeminiDB Mongo instance are in the same security group, they can communicate with each other by default. No security group rule needs to be configured. 		
	 If the ECS and GeminiDB Mongo instance are in different security groups, configure security group rules for the ECS and DB instance, respectively. 		
	 GeminiDB Mongo instance: Configure inbound rules for the security group associated with the instance. For details, see Procedure. 		
	 ECS: The default security group rule allows all outbound data packets, so you do not need to configure a security rule for the ECS. If not all outbound traffic is allowed in the security group, configure an outbound rule for the ECS. 		

Scenario	Description
Connecting to an instance over a public network	To access a GeminiDB Mongo instance over a public network, add an inbound rule for the security group associated with the instance. For details, see Procedure .

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the instance.
- **Step 4** Configure security group rules.

Method 1

In the **Network Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the security group.

Figure 4-28 Security Group

Network Information				
VPC	default_vpc	Security Group	default 🖉	
Subnet	default_subnet(192.168.0.0/24)	Database Port	8635 🖋	
IPv4 Address				đ

Method 2

On the **Basic Information** page, choose **Connections** in the navigation pane on the left. In the **Security Group** area on the right, click the name of the security group. The **Security Group** page is displayed.

Figure	4-29	Security	Group
		Security	Cicap

Security Group	

Security Group

```
default 🖌
```

Step 5 Add an inbound rule.

1. Click the Inbound Rules tab.

Figure 4-30 Inbound rules

Sur	nmary Inbound Rules Outbound Rules Associated Ir	stances	
	Add Rule Fast-Add Rule Delete Allow Common Ports	Inbound Rules: 2 Learn more about sec	urity group configuration.
	Protocol & Port 🐨 🗇	Туре	Source (2)
		IPv4	0.0.0.0/0 🗇
	- All	IPv4	Sys-default 🕥
		IPv6	Sys-default 💿

2. Click Add Rule. The Add Inbound Rule dialog box is displayed.

Figure 4-31 Adding a rule

Add Inbound Rule Learn more about security group configuration.						
Inbound rules allow incoming traffic to instances associated with the security group.						
Security Group Sys-default You can import multiple rules in a batch.						
Protocol & Port ⑦	Туре	Source 🕐	Description	Operation		
TCP •	IPv4 v	IP address 0.0.0.0/0	•	Operation 🗸		
↔ Add Rule						
		OK Cancel				

3. In the displayed dialog box, set required parameters.

Table 4-10 Inbound rule settings

Parame ter	Description	Example Value
Protoco l & Port	 The network protocol required for access. Available options: All, TCP, UDP, ICMP, or GRE 	ТСР
	 Port: The port (1 to 65535) for accessing the ECS. 	
Туре	IP address type. This parameter is available after IPv6 is enabled.	IPv4
	– IPv4	
	– IPv6	
Source	Source The IP address, IP address group, or security group that the rule applies to, which allows access from IP addresses or instances in other security group. Example:	
	 Single IP address: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/32 (IPv4) 	
	 Subnet: xxx.xxx.0/24 	
	 All IP addresses: 0.0.0.0/0 	
	 sg-abc (security group) 	
Descrip tion	(Optional) Provides supplementary information about the security group rule.	-
	The description can contain up to 255 characters and cannot contain angle brackets (<>).	

Step 6 Click OK.

----End

4.5.2 Binding and Unbinding an EIP

Scenarios

After you create a GeminiDB Mongo instance, you can bind an EIP to it to allow external access. If later you want to prohibit external access, you can also unbind the EIP from the instance.

Precautions

- Before accessing a database, apply for an EIP on the VPC console. Then, add an inbound rule to allow the IP addresses or IP address ranges of ECSs. For details, see **Configuring Security Group Rules**.
- To change the EIP that has been bound to a node, unbind it from the node first.

Binding an EIP

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance that you want to bind an EIP to and click its name.
- **Step 4** On the **Basic Information** page, in the **Node Information** area, locate the target node and click **Bind EIP** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 4-32 Binding an EIP

Delete Node Add Node						
Name/ID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	EIP	Operation
	Secondary	Available	822		Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP
	Primary	Available	822		Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP
	Secondary	Available	az2		Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP

Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, all available unbound EIPs are listed. Select the required EIP and click **Yes**. If no available EIPs are displayed, click **View EIP** and create an EIP on the VPC console.

Figure 4-33 Selecting an EIP

Bind EIP					×
After you bind rules in its see the GeminiDE	I an EIP to your instan curity group to secure 8, instead of the EIP c	ce, connect to it throug your data. If you want onsole.	gh <mark>SSL</mark> and config to unbind the EIP	ure strict inbound ar from your instance,	nd outbound do this on
Node Information	Node Name		Status		
			Availal	ble	
Select EIP Only EIP	s that have not been b	ound to any cloud reso	ource are displaye	:d.	C
EIP		Status		Bandwidth	
۲		Onbound		10Mbit/s	
				ОК	Cancel

Step 6 In the **EIP** column, view the EIP that is successfully bound.

To unbind the EIP from the DB instance, see Unbinding an EIP.

----End

Unbinding an EIP

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instance Management** page, click the instance that you want to unbind an EIP from.
- **Step 4** On the **Basic Information** page, in the **Node Information** area, locate the target node and click **Unbind EIP** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 4-34 Unbinding an EIP

 Note information						
Delete Node Add Node						
Name/ID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	EIP	Operation
	Secondary	Available	822			View Metric Unbind EIP
	Primary	Available	az2		Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP
	Secondary	Available	az2		Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP

Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

To bind an EIP to the DB instance again, see **Binding an EIP**.

----End

4.5.3 Configuring an SSL Connection

Scenarios

Secure Socket Layer (SSL) is an encryption-based Internet security protocol for establishing an encrypted link between a server and a client. It provides privacy, authentication, and integrity to Internet communications.

- Authenticates users and servers, ensuring that data is sent to the correct clients and servers.
- Encrypts data to prevent it from being intercepted during transfer.
- Ensures data integrity during transmission.

After SSL is enabled, you can establish an encrypted connection between your client and the instance you want to access to improve data security.

Precautions

- To use SSL, contact customer service to apply for the required permissions.
- Enabling or disabling SSL will cause instances to restart. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- If SSL is enabled, you can connect to a database using SSL to improve security.

Encryption algorithms that may have security risks are not allowed. Secure encryption algorithms and supported cipher suits are described **Table 4-11**.

Table 4-11	Secure er	ncryption	algorithms	and sup	oported	cipher	suits

Version	TLS Version	Cipher Suite	
4.0	TLS 1.2	DHE-RSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384	
		DHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256	

The server where the client is located must support the corresponding TLS version and encryption algorithm suite. Otherwise, the connection fails.

• If SSL is disabled, you can connect to a database using an unencrypted connection.

Enabling SSL

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the instance. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the **DB Information** area, click **we** to enable the SSL toggle.

Alternatively, choose **Connections** in the navigation pane on the left. On the **Basic**

Information page, click **w** to enable the SSL toggle.

- **Step 5** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.
- **Step 6** In the **Basic Information** area, view the results.
- **Step 7** After SSL is enabled, click $\stackrel{\perp}{=}$ next to **SSL** to download an SSL certificate.

For details about how to connect to an instance using an SSL connection, see **SSL Connection**.

----End

Disabling SSL

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 On the Instance Management page, click the instance.
- **Step 4** In the **DB Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **OD** next to the **SSL** field.

Alternatively, in the navigation pane on the left, choose **Connections**. In the **Basic Information** area, click next to the **SSL** field.

- Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, click Yes.
- Step 6 In the Basic Information area, view the results.
- **Step 7** After SSL is disabled, you can connect to an instance using an unencrypted connection.

For details, see Non-SSL Connection.

----End

4.5.4 Changing a Database Port

Scenarios

This section describes how to modify the database port to ensure system security.

The database port cannot be changed when the instance is in any of the following statuses:

- Frozen
- Restarting
- Adding nodes
- Changing instance class
- Scaling up
- Deleting node

Precautions

This function is in the open beta test (OBT) phase. Contact customer service to apply for the function.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the target DB instance.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Connections**.
- **Step 5** In the **Basic Information** area, click \checkmark to right of the **Database Port** field. The database port ranges from 2100 to 9500 and cannot be 8636, 8637, or 8638.
 - To submit the change, click \checkmark . This process takes about 1 to 5 minutes.
 - To cancel the change, click \times .
- **Step 6** View the modification result.

----End

4.5.5 Changing a Security Group

Scenarios

You can change the security group for GeminiDB Mongo instances.

Precautions

- If you are adding nodes to an instance, the security group of the instance cannot be changed.
- This function is in the open beta test (OBT) phase. To use this function, contact customer service.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the target DB instance.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Connections**.
- **Step 5** In the **Security Group** area, click \swarrow beside the security group name and select the required security group.
 - To submit the change, click \checkmark . This process takes about 1 to 3 minutes.
 - To cancel the change, click \times .
- **Step 6** View the modification result.

----End

4.5.6 Configuring Access Across CIDR Blocks

Access across CIDR blocks is required only when the CIDR blocks of the client and the replica set instance are different. For example, if the client CIDR block is

192.168.0.0/16 and the replica set instance's CIDR block is 172.16.0.0/24, add the CIDR block 192.168.0.0/16 so that the client can access the replica set instance.

This section describes how to configure access to an instance across CIDR blocks.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the instance you want to configure access across CIDR blocks for.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Connections**.
- Step 5 In the Address area, click Enable to the right of Access Across CIDR Blocks field.

Figure 4-35 Enabling access across CIDR blocks

Address	
Access Across CIDR Blocks	Disabled Enable
IPv4 Address	

Step 6 Configure the source client CIDR.

F	igur	e 4-36 Access across CIDR blocks
	Acce	ess Across CIDR Blocks
	0	To enable communication between the DB instance and the VPC subnet of the client, create a VPC peering connection on the VPC console.

Instance Network	VPC	Subnet
	default_vpc	default_subnet
Client CIDR Block	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
		OK Cancel

- If there are multiple CIDR blocks, click ⁽⁺⁾ to add them in sequence. Up to 9 CIDR blocks can be configured, but you cannot insert duplicate blocks.
- The blocks starting with 127 are not allowed. The subnet mask ranges from 8 to 32.
- **Step 7** Confirm that access across CIDR blocks is enabled. **Enabled** is displayed to the right of the **Access Across CIDR Blocks** field.

To change the CIDR, click **Change** to the right of **Access Across CIDR Blocks** to add, modify, or delete CIDR blocks.

Figure 4-37 Modifying access across CIDR blocks

Address		
Access Across CIDR Block:	s Enabled Change	
IPv4 Address		Ć

To ensure the ECS and the DB instance can communicate with each other, configure the connection by referring to **VPC Peering Connection Overview**.

```
----End
```

4.6 Database Commands

4.6.1 Supported and Restricted Commands

After you connect to the GeminiDB Mongo database, pay attention to the following supported and restricted commands:

For more information, see official MongoDB documentation.

Туре	Command	Supported In Read/Write Mode	Remarks
Aggregates	aggregate	\checkmark	-
Commands	count	\checkmark	-
	distinct	\checkmark	-
	group	\checkmark	-
	mapReduce	\checkmark	-
Geospatial	geoNear	\checkmark	-
Commands	geoSearch	×	Not supported by replica sets.
Query and Write	find	\checkmark	-
Operation Commands	insert	\checkmark	-
	update	\checkmark	-
	delete	\checkmark	-
	findAndModify	\checkmark	-
	getMore	\checkmark	-

Table 4-12 Commands supported and restricted by version 4.0

Туре	Command	Supported In Read/Write Mode	Remarks
	getLastError	\checkmark	-
	parallelCollection- Scan	x	System command
Query Plan Cache Commands	planCacheListFil- ters	\checkmark	-
	planCacheSetFil- ter	\checkmark	-
	planCacheClearFil ters	\checkmark	-
	planCacheListQue ryShapes	\checkmark	-
	planCacheListPlan s	\checkmark	-
	planCacheClear	\checkmark	-
Authentication	logout	\checkmark	-
Commands	authenticate	\checkmark	-
	getnonce	\checkmark	-
User	createUser	\checkmark	-
Commands	updateUser	\checkmark	-
	dropUser	\checkmark	-
	dropAllUsersFrom Database	\checkmark	-
	grantRolesToUser	\checkmark	-
	revokeRolesFrom User	\checkmark	-
	usersInfo	\checkmark	-
Role Management Commands	invalidateUserC- ache	\checkmark	-
	createRole	\checkmark	-
	updateRole		-
	dropRole		-
	dropAllRolesFrom Database		-

Туре	Command	Supported In Read/Write Mode	Remarks
	grantPrivileges- ToRole	\checkmark	-
	revokePrivileges- FromRole	\checkmark	-
	grantRolesToRole	\checkmark	-
	revokeRolesFrom- Role	\checkmark	-
	rolesInfo	\checkmark	-
Replication	replSetFreeze	x	System command
Commands	replSetGetStatus	\checkmark	Supported by replica sets.
	replSetInitiate	x	System command
	replSetMaintenan ce	x	System command
	replSetReconfig	x	System command
	replSetStepDown	x	System command
	replSetSyncFrom	x	System command
	resync	x	System command
	applyOps	x	System command
	isMaster	\checkmark	-
	replSetGetConfig	x	System command
Sharding	flushRouterConfig	x	System command
Commands	addShard	x	System command
	addShardToZone	x	System command
	balancerStart	x	System command
	balancerStatus	\checkmark	System command
	balancerStop	x	System command
	removeShardFrom Zone	x	System command
	updateZoneKeyRa nge	x	System command

Туре	Command	Supported In Read/Write Mode	Remarks
	cleanupOrphaned	x	High-risk commands
	checkShardingIn- dex	x	System command
	enableSharding	\checkmark	-
	listShards	\checkmark	System command
	removeShard	х	High-risk commands
	getShardMap	x	System command
	getShardVersion	x	System command
	mergeChunks	x	System command
	setShardVersion	x	System command
	shardCollection	\checkmark	Currently, this command applies to empty tables only.
	shardingState	x	System command
	unsetSharding	x	System command
	split	x	System command
	splitChunk	x	System command
	splitVector	x	System command
	moveChunk	x	System command
	movePrimary	x	System command
	isdbgrid	\checkmark	-
Sessions Commands	abortTransaction	\checkmark	Supported by replica sets.
	commitTransactio n	\checkmark	Supported by replica sets.
	endSessions	\checkmark	-
	killAllSessions	\checkmark	-
	killAllSessionsBy- Pattern		-

Туре	Command	Supported In Read/Write Mode	Remarks		
	killSessions	\checkmark	-		
	refreshSessions	\checkmark	-		
	startSession	\checkmark	-		
Administration Commands	setFeatureCompa- tibilityVersion	\checkmark	-		
	renameCollection	\checkmark	-		
	dropDatabase	\checkmark	-		
	listCollections	\checkmark	-		
	drop	\checkmark	-		
	create	\checkmark	-		
	clone	x	System command		
	cloneCollection	x	System command		
	cloneCollectionAs- Capped	x	System command		
	convertToCapped	\checkmark	-		
	filemd5	\checkmark	-		
	createIndexes	\checkmark	-		
	listIndexes	\checkmark	-		
	dropIndexes	\checkmark	-		
	fsync	\checkmark	-		
	clean	x	System command		
	connPoolSync	x	System command		
	connectionStatus	\checkmark	-		
	compact	x	High-risk commands		
	collMod	\checkmark	-		
	reIndex	√	-		
	setParameter	x	System configuration command		
	getParameter	\checkmark	-		

Туре	Command	Supported In Read/Write Mode	Remarks		
	repair Database	x	High-risk commands		
	touch	x	The storage engine type is not supported.		
	shutdown	x	High-risk commands		
	logRotate	x	High-risk commands		
	killOp	\checkmark	-		
Diagnostic Commands	availableQueryOp tions	\checkmark	-		
	buildInfo	\checkmark	-		
	collStats	\checkmark	-		
	connPoolStats	x	System command		
	dataSize	\checkmark	-		
	dbHash	x	System command		
	dbStats	\checkmark	-		
	driverOIDTest	x	System command		
	explain	\checkmark	-		
	features	\checkmark	-		
	getCmdLineOpts	x	System command		
	getLog	x	System command		
	hostInfo	x	System command		
	isSelf	x	System command		
	listCommands	\checkmark	-		
	listDatabases	\checkmark	-		
	netstat	x	System command		
	ping	\checkmark	-		
	profile	\checkmark	-		
	serverStatus	\checkmark	-		

Туре	Command	Supported In Read/Write Mode	Remarks		
	shardConnPoolSta ts	x	System command		
	top	x	System command		
	validate	x	System configuration command		
	whatsmyuri	\checkmark	-		
System Events Auditing Commands	logApplicationMe ssage	x	System command		

4.7 Data Backup

4.7.1 Overview

GeminiDB Mongo API allows you to create backups for your instance to ensure data reliability. After an instance is deleted, the manual backup data is retained. Automated backup data is released together with instances. Backup data cannot be downloaded or exported.

Backup Methods

GeminiDB Mongo instances support automated and manual backups.

Automated backup

You can click **Modify Backup Policy** on the GeminiDB console, and the system will automatically back up your instance data based on the time window and backup cycle you set in the backup policy and will store the data for the retention period you specified.

Automated backups cannot be manually deleted. You can adjust their retention period by referring to **Modifying an Automated Backup Policy**, and backups that expire will be automatically deleted.

• Manual backup

A manual backup is a full backup of a DB instance and can be retained until you manually delete it. You can create a manual backup for your instance at any time to meet service requirements.

Regularly backing up your database is recommended. If your database becomes faulty or data is corrupted, you can restore it from backups.

Backup Method	Scenario
Automated backup	After you set a backup policy, the system automatically backs up your instance based on the policy. You can also modify the policy based on service requirements.
Manual backup	You can manually create full backups for your instance based on service requirements.

 Table 4-13 Backup methods and scenarios

Backup Principles

GeminiDB Mongo supports only replica set instances.

Each replica set instance can contain one primary node and multiple secondary nodes. As shown in Figure 4-38, the GeminiDB Mongo replica set is backed up on the node with the minimum dictionary order ID. Data backup will consume CPU and memory resources of the node, so the CPU and memory usage may increase. Final backups will be compressed and stored in OBS, without occupying storage space of the instance.

Figure 4-38 Backup flowchart



×

Backup Storage

Backups are stored in OBS buckets to provide disaster recovery and save storage space.

After you purchase an instance, GeminiDB Mongo API will provide additional backup storage of the same size as you purchased. For example, if you purchase an instance of 100 GB, you will obtain additional backup storage of 100 GB free of charge. If the size of backup data does not exceed 100 GB, the backup data is stored on OBS free of charge. If the size of the backup data exceeds 100 GB, you will be charged based on the OBS billing rules.

4.7.2 Managing Automated Backups

GeminiDB Mongo API supports automated backups to ensure data reliability. If a database or table is deleted, maliciously or accidentally, backups can help recover your data.

Configuring an Automated Backup Policy

Modify Backup Policy

Automated backups are generated according to a backup policy and saved as packages in OBS buckets to ensure data confidentiality and durability. You are advised to regularly back up your database, in case it becomes faulty or damaged. Backing up data affects the database read and write performance, so you are advised to set the automated backup time window to off-peak hours.

When you create an instance, automated backup is enabled by default.

Figure 4-39	Modifying	а	backup	policy
-------------	-----------	---	--------	--------

mouny Buona	proney			
Automated Backup				
Retention Period	- 7 + Enter an integer from -	-) days 1 to 3660.		
Time Zone	GMT+08:00			
Time Window	01:00-02:00		~	
Backup Cycle	IIA 🔽			
	🗸 Monday 🗸	Tuesday	🗸 Wednesday	🗸 Thursday
	🗸 Friday 🗸	Saturday	🗸 Sunday	
	A minimum of one day	must be selected.		
				OK Cancel

• **Retention Period**: Automated backup files are saved for seven days by default. The backup retention period can range from 1 to 35 days. Full backups are retained till the retention period expires.

- Extending the retention period improves data reliability. You can extend the retention period as needed.
- If you shorten the retention period, the new backup policy takes effect for existing backups. Any automated backups (including full and incremental backups) that have expired will be automatically deleted. Manual backups will not be automatically deleted but you can delete them manually.

D NOTE

- If the retention period is less than seven days, the system automatically backs up data daily.
- The system checks existing automated backup files and deletes the files that exceed the backup retention period you set.
- **Time Window**: A one-hour period the backup will be scheduled within 24 hours, such as 04:00–05:00. The backup time is in GMT format. If the DST or standard time is switched, the backup time segment changes with the time zone.

If **Retention Period** is set to **2**, full and incremental backups that have been stored for more than two days will be automatically deleted. That is, the backup generated on Monday will be deleted on Wednesday. Similarly, the backup generated on Tuesday will be deleted on Thursday.

Policy for automatically deleting full backups:

To ensure data integrity, even after the retention period expires, the most recent backup will be retained, for example,

If **Backup Cycle** was set to **Monday** and **Tuesday** and the **Retention Period** was set to **2**:

 The full backup generated on Monday will be automatically deleted on Thursday. The reasons are as follows:

The backup generated on Monday expires on Wednesday, but it is the last backup, so it will be retained until a new backup expires. The next backup will be generated on Tuesday and will expire on Thursday. So the full backup generated on Monday will not be automatically deleted until Thursday.

 The full backup generated on Tuesday will be automatically deleted on the following Wednesday. The reasons are as follows:

The backup generated on Tuesday will expire on Thursday, but as it is the last backup, so it will be retained until a new backup expires. The next backup will be generated on the following Monday and will expire on the following Wednesday. So the full backup generated on Tuesday will not be automatically deleted until the following Wednesday.

- Backup Cycle: All options are selected by default.
 - **All**: Each day of the week is selected. The system automatically backs up data every day.
 - Select a cycle: You can select one or more days in a week. The system automatically backs up data at the specified time.

NOTE

A full backup starts within one hour of the time you specify. The amount of time required for the backup depends on the amount of data to be backed up. The more data has to be backed up, the longer it will take.

×

- After the DB instance is created, you can modify the automated backup policy as needed. You can change the time window after the DB instance is created. The system backs up data based on the automated backup policy you have set.
- If automated backup is disabled, any automated backups in progress stop immediately.

Modifying an Automated Backup Policy

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the instance whose backup policy you want to modify.
- Step 4 Choose Backups & Restorations in the navigation pane one the left, and click Modify Backup Policy. In the displayed dialog box, set the backup policy. Then, click OK.

For details about how to set a backup policy, see **Configuring an Automated Backup Policy**.

mouny Bucke	p r oncy
Automated Backup	
Retention Period	
	Enter an integer from 1 to 3660.
Time Zone	GMT+08:00
Time Window	01:00-02:00 ~
Backup Cycle	II All
	🖌 Monday 🖌 Tuesday 🗸 Wednesday 🗸 Thursday
	🗸 Friday 🔽 Saturday 🔽 Sunday
	A minimum of one day must be selected.
	OK Cancel

Figure 4-40 Modifying backup policies

Modify Backup Policy

Step 5 Check or manage the generated backups on the Backups or Backups & Restorations page.

----End

Disabling Automated Backup

Step 1 Log in to the management console.

Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.

- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, click the instance whose backup policy you want to modify.
- **Step 4** Choose **Backups & Restorations** in the navigation pane one the left, and click **Modify Backup Policy**.

Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, click **CO** and click **OK**.

Figure 4-41 Disabling the automated backup policy

Modify Backı	IP Policy
Automated Backup	If the automated backup policy is disabled, automated backups will not be created. Existing automated backups will be retained.
Retention Period	- 7 + days Enter an integer from 1 to 3660.
Time Zone	GMT+08:00
Time Window	01:00-02:00 ~
Backup Cycle	IA 💟
	🖸 Monday 🛛 Tuesday 💟 Wednesday 💟 Thursday
	🕑 Friday 💽 Saturday 💽 Sunday
	OK Cancel

When your disable automated backup, specify whether to delete the automated backups:

- If you select **Delete automated backups**, all backup files within the retention period will be deleted. There are no automated backups displayed until you enable automated backup again.
- If you do not select **Delete automated backups**, backup files within the retention period will be retained, but you can still manually delete them later if needed. For details, see **Deleting an Automated Backup**.

If automated backup is disabled, any automated backups in progress stop immediately.

----End

Deleting an Automated Backup

If automated backup is disabled, you can delete stored automated backups to free up storage space.

If automated backup is enabled, the system will delete automated backups when they expire. You cannot delete them manually.

NOTICE

Deleted backups cannot be recovered. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

- Method 1
 - a. Log in to the management console.
 - b. In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
 - c. On the **Instances** page, click the instance whose backup you want to delete.
 - d. Choose **Backups & Restorations** in the navigation pane on the left, locate the backup you want to delete, and click **Delete** in the **Operation** column.
 - e. In the displayed dialog box, confirm the backup details and click **Yes**.
- Method 2
 - a. Log in to the management console.
 - b. In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
 - c. On the **Backups** page, locate the backup and click **Delete**.
 - d. In the **Delete Backup** dialog box, confirm the backup details and click **Yes**.

4.7.3 Managing Manual Backups

To ensure data reliability, GeminiDB Mongo API allows you to manually back up instances whose status is **Available**. If a database or table is deleted, maliciously or accidentally, backups can help recover your data.

Precautions

• Manual backups are full backups.

Creating a Manual Backup

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 Create a manual backup.

Method 1

On the **Instances** page, locate the instance you want to back up and choose **More** > **Create Backup** in the **Operation** column.

Method 2

1. On the **Instances** page, click the instance you want to create a backup for.

~

2. Choose **Backups & Restorations** in the navigation pane on the left, and click **Create Backup**.

Method 3

In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups**. On the displayed page, click **Create Backup**.

Step 4 In the displayed dialog box, specify a backup name and description and click **OK**.

Figure 4-42 Creating a manual backup

Create Backup			,
DB Instance Name			
* Backup Name	backup-ec01	0	
Description		0	
		0/256 %	
		OK Cancel	\supset

 Table 4-14 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
DB Instance Name	Must be the name of the DB instance to be backed up and cannot be modified.
Backup Name	Must be 4 to 64 characters long and start with a letter. It is case- insensitive and contains only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_).
Description	Can include a maximum of 256 characters and cannot include line breaks or special characters >!<"&'=

Step 5 View the backup status.

- When the backup is being created, query the backup status on the **Backups** or **Backups & Restorations** page. The backup status is **Backing up**.
- After the backup is created, the backup status changes to **Completed**.

----End

Deleting a Manual Backup

If you do not need a manual backup any longer, delete it on the **Backups** or **Backups & Restorations** page.

Deleted backups are not displayed in the backup list.

NOTICE

Deleted backups cannot be recovered. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

Method 1

- 1. Log in to the management console.
- 2. In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- 3. On the **Instances** page, click the instance whose backup you want to delete and click its name.
- 4. Choose **Backups & Restorations** in the navigation pane on the left, locate the backup you want to delete, and click **Delete** in the **Operation** column.
- 5. In the displayed dialog box, confirm the backup details and click **Yes**.

Method 2

- 1. Log in to the management console.
- 2. In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- 3. On the **Backups** page, locate the backup that you want to delete and click **Delete**.
- 4. In the displayed dialog box, confirm the backup details and click **Yes**.

4.8 Data Restoration

4.8.1 Restoration Methods

GeminiDB Mongo API supports multiple forms of data restoration. You can select one based on service requirements.

Method	Scenario
Restoring data to a new instance	You can restore an existing backup file to a new instance.
Restoring data to an existing instance	You can restore an existing backup file to an existing instance.

Table 4-15 Restoration methods

4.8.2 Restoring Data to a New or Existing Instance

Scenarios

GeminiDB Mongo API allows you to use an existing backup to restore data to a new or existing instance.

Precautions

This function is in the open beta test (OBT) phase. To use this function, contact customer service.

Procedure

Step 1 Log in to the management console.

- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** Restore a DB instance from the backup.

Method 1

- 1. On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose backup you want to restore and click its name.
- 2. On the **Backups & Restorations** page, locate the target backup and click **Restore**.

Figure 4-43 Backups and restorations

Batch Delete Create Backup Modify Backup Polcy						Enter a backup name.	
	Backup NameID 👙	Backup Type 🖯	Backup Time \ominus	Status 🕀	Size	Description	Operation
		Automated	Jul 01, 2024 14:02:14 - Jul 01, 2024 14:04:05 GMT+	Completed	0.12 MB	-	Restore

Method 2

On the **Backups** page, locate the backup that you want to restore and click **Restore** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 4-44 Backup management

Backups ③									
Same-Region Backups Cross-Re	egion Backups								
Instance-level Backups Table-level Backups									
Batch Delete									
9	× Add filter								
Backup NamelD 😔	DB Instance NameID \ominus	Compatible API	Backup Type \ominus	Backup Time \ominus	Status 😔	Size Description	Operation		
		MongoDB 4.0	Automated	Jul 01, 2024 14:02:14 - Jul	Completed	0.12 MB -	Restore		

- **Step 4** In the displayed dialog box, confirm the instance details and restoration method and click **OK**.
 - Create New Instance

Figure 4-45 Restoring data to a new instance

Restore DB Instance								
DB Instance	Backup Name		DB Instance Name					
Restoration Method	Create New Instance	Restore to Existing	ОК	Cancel				

The **Create New Instance** page is displayed. Configure the new DB instance details based on your service requirements.

- The default API type and DB engine version are the same as those of the original instance and cannot be changed.
- GeminiDB automatically calculates the minimum storage space required for restoration based on the size of the selected backup file. The storage capacity depends on the instance specifications, and must be an integer.
- You need to set a new administrator password.
- To modify other parameters, see the description of buying DB instances of other DB engines in the *Getting Started with GeminiDB Mongo*.
- Restore to Existing

Select an existing instance and click **OK**.

NOTICE

- You can restore a deleted instance to an existing instance from a backup if available.
- Restoring to an existing DB instance will overwrite the data, and the existing DB instance becomes unavailable during the restoration.
- After data is restored to an existing DB instance, the username and password saved in the backup file will overwrite those of the existing DB instance.
- Only DB instances that have the same number of nodes, use the same or later DB API version, and have the same or higher specifications than the original DB instance can be selected.
- The storage space of the instance that you want to restore the backup to must be greater than or equal to the size of the backup. Otherwise, the restoration task fails.
| Figure 4-46 | Restore DB Instar | nce | | | |
|--------------------|--|---|---|--|----------------------|
| Restore DB In | istance | | | | × |
| DB Instance | Backup Name | | DB Instance Name | e | |
| | | | | | |
| Restoration Method | Create New Instance | Restore to Exis | ting | | |
| | I acknowledge that restoring to
instance to be unavailable during th
have the same or higher specification | an existing DB in
e restoration. Only
ons, and have a g | stance will overwrite the o
/ DB instances that use the
reater size than the origin | lata and cause the existing I
ne same or later DB engine
al DB instance are displaye | DB
version,
d. |
| | | | Enter a DB | instance name or ID. Q | C |
| | DB Instance Name/ID | | DB Instance Type | Compatible API | |
| | ۲ | | Replica set | MongoDB 4.0 | |
| | | | Replica set | MongoDB 4.0 | |
| | | | Replica set | MongoDB 4.0 | |
| | Total Records: 11 10 V | < 1 2 → | | | |
| | | | | ок с | ancel |

Step 5 View the restoration results.

• Create New Instance

A new instance is created using the backup data. The restoration is successful if the status of the new instance changes from **Creating** to **Available**.

After the restoration is complete, a full backup will be automatically triggered.

The new DB instance is independent from the original one.

Restore to Existing

On the **Instances** page, the status of the instance changes from **Restoring** to **Available**.

If automated backup is enabled, a full backup will be triggered after the restoration is complete. Otherwise, the full backup will not be triggered.

----End

4.9 Parameter Template Management

4.9.1 Creating a Parameter Template

You can use database parameter templates to manage DB API configurations. A database parameter template acts as a container for API configuration values that can be applied to one or more DB instances.

Each user can create up to 100 parameter templates. All types of instances in the same project can share the quota.

х

Precautions

This function is in the open beta test (OBT) phase. Contact customer service to apply for the function.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane on the left, choose Parameter Templates.
- **Step 4** On the **Parameter Templates** page, click **Create Parameter Template**.
- **Step 5** Select a compatible API, specify a DB engine version and a parameter group description, and click **OK**.

Figure 4-47 Creating a parameter template

Create Parameter Template

MongoDB * Compatible API Cassandra InfluxDB Redis * DB Instance Type Replica set 40 DB Engine Version \sim * Parameter Template Name paramsGroup-88d1 0 ? Description Enter a parameter template description. 0/256 // You can create 100 more parameter templates. The parameter template quota is shared by all DB instances in a project. OK Cancel

- **Compatible API**: Select the API type that is compatible with your DB API parameter template.
- **DB Instance Type**: Select an instance type.
- **DB Engine Version**: Select **4.0**.
- **Parameter Template Name**: The template name can be up to 64 characters long. It can contain only uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, hyphens (-), underscores (_), and periods (.).

- **Description**: The description contains a maximum of 256 characters and cannot include line breaks or the following special characters >!<"&'=
- **Step 6** On the **Parameter Templates** page, view the created parameter template.

----End

4.9.2 Modifying Parameters of GeminiDB Mongo Instances

You can modify parameters in a custom parameter template so that your instance can deliver spectacular performance.

Note that parameter values in default parameter templates cannot be changed.

NOTE

Though parameter values in a default template cannot be changed, you can view details about a default parameter template. If a custom parameter template is set incorrectly, the database startup may fail. You can re-configure the custom parameter template according to the configurations of the default parameter template.

Modifying a Custom Parameter Template and Applying It to an Instance

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.
- **Step 4** On the **Custom Templates** page, click the parameter template you want to modify.
- **Step 5** Change parameter values as required.

Figure 4-48 Modifying parameters in a parameter template

Parameters					
Change History	Sitve Cancel Preview				Enter a parameter name. Q
	Parameter Name	Effective upon Restart ⊕	Value	Allowed Values	Description
	 replica 				
	connPoolMaxConnsPerHost	Yes	600	200-2,000	Maximum number of connections in the connection $\ensuremath{p}\xspace\ldots$
	cursorTimeoutMillis	No	600000	600.000-1.000.000	The expiration threshold in milliseconds for idle curso
	disable.JavaScript.JT	No	tue ~	true, false	Whether to disable JavaScriptJIT.
	net maxincomingConnections	Yes	default	400-32,000	The maximum number of simultaneous connections t
	operationProfiling.mode	Yes	slowOp ~	off, slowOp, all	Database profiling level. The operation parformance i
	operationProfiling.slowOpThresholdMs	No	100	10-10.000	Threshold of the slow log query time, in milliseconds.
	security authorization	Yes	enabled ~	disabled, enabled	Whether to enable user access control
	security javascriptEnabled	Yes	false v	true, faise	Whether to execute the JavaScript script.
	storage.syncPeriodSecs	Yes	60	60	interval for refreshing data on disks. The default valu

- To save the modifications, click **Save**.
- To cancel the modifications, click **Cancel**.
- To preview the modifications, click **Preview**.

Figure 4-49 Previewing changes

Preview Change			~
Parameter Name	Current	New	
replica.connPoolMaxCo	600	601	
			Close

Step 6 After parameters are modified, click **Change History** to view parameter modification details.

For details about how to view parameter modification details, see **Viewing Parameter Change History**.

NOTICE

- The modifications take effect only after you apply the parameter template to DB instances. For details, see **Applying a Parameter Template**.
- The change history page displays only the modifications of the last seven days.

----End

Modifying Parameters of an Instance

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Instances**, locate the instance whose parameters you want to export, and click its name.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameters**. On the displayed page, modify parameters as required.

Figure 4-50 Parameters

Parameters Change History				
Save Cancel Preview Ex	port Compare			Enter a parameter name. Q
Parameter Name	Effective upon Restart 🕀	Value	Allowed Values	Description
 replica 				
connPoolMaxConnsPerHost	Yes	600	200-2,000	Maximum number of connections in the connection p
cursorTimeoutMills	No	600000	600,000-1,000,000	The expiration threshold in milliseconds for idle cursor
disableJavaScriptJIT	No	true 🗸	true, faise	Whether to disable JavaScriptJIT.
net.maxIncomingConnections	Yes	400	400-32,000	The maximum number of simultaneous connections t
operationProfiling mode	Yes	slowOp ~	off, slowOp, all	Database profiling level. The operation performance i
operationProfiling.slowOpThresholdMs	No	100	10-10,000	Threshold of the slow log query time, in milliseconds.
security authorization	Yes	enabled ~	disabled, enabled	Whether to enable user access control.
security jevescriptEnabled	Yes	false v	true, faise	Whether to execute the JavaScript script.
storage.syncPeriodSecs	Yes	60	60	Interval for refreshing data on disks. The default value

- To save the modifications, click **Save**.
- To cancel the modifications, click **Cancel**.
- To preview the modifications, click **Preview**.
- **Step 5** After parameters are modified, click **Change History** to view parameter modification details.

For details about how to view parameter modification details, see **Viewing Parameter Change History**.

NOTICE

After you modify instance parameters, the modifications immediately take effect for the instance.

Check the value in the **Effective upon Restart** column.

- If the value is **Yes** and the instance status is **Pending restart**, restart the instance for the modifications to take effect.
- If the value is **No**, the modifications take effect immediately.

----End

4.9.3 Viewing Parameter Change History

Scenarios

You can view parameter change history of an instance or one of its custom parameter templates based on service requirements.

NOTE

In a newly exported or created parameter template, change history is left blank.

Viewing Change History of a Custom Parameter Template

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**. On the **Custom Templates** page, click the parameter template you want to view.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Change History**. Then, view the name, original value, new value, modification status, and modification time of the target parameter.

Figure 4-51 Viewing change history of a customer parameter template

Parameters					
Change History	The parameter change history of the last seven days is	displayed.			Enter a parameter name.
	Parameter Name 🔶	Original Value	New Value	Modification Status	Modification Time $ \Theta $
	replica.comPoolMaxComsPerHost	600	601	 Successful 	Jul 01, 2024 15:02:36 GMT+08:00

You can apply the parameter template to instances by referring to **Applying a Parameter Template**.

----End

Viewing Parameter Change History of an Instance

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose parameter change history you want to view and click its name.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameters**. On the **Change History** page, view the name, original value, new value, modification status, and modification time of the target parameter.

Figure 4-52	Viewing	parameter	change	history	of	an	instance
-------------	---------	-----------	--------	---------	----	----	----------

Parameters Change History						
The parameter change history of the last seven days is	displayed.					Enter a parameter name.
Parameter Name	Original Value	New Value	Modification Status	Modification Time \varTheta	Application Status	Application Time
 replica 						
connPoolMaxConnsPerHost	600	601	Successful	Jul 01, 2024 15:06:01 GMT+08:00	Not applied	**
cursorTimeoutMills	600000	600001	Successful	Jul 01, 2024 15:06:30 GMT+08:00	Applied	Jul 01, 2024 15:06:30 GMT+08:00

----End

4.9.4 Exporting a Parameter Template

Scenarios

- You can export a parameter template of a DB instance for future use. To learn how to apply the exported parameter template to a DB instance, refer to section **Applying a Parameter Template**.
- You can export the parameter template details (parameter names, values, and descriptions) of a DB instance to a CSV file for review and analysis.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Instance Management**. On the displayed page, click the target DB instance.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameters**. On the **Parameters** tab, above the parameter list, click **Export**.

Figure 4-53 Exporting a parameter template

Export Parameters			
Export To	Parameter Template	File	
* New Parameter Template	paramsGroup-9005		0
Description	Enter a parameter template d	lescription.	0
		0/256 //	
		ОК	Cancel

• **Parameter Template**: You can export the parameters of the DB instance to a template for future use.

In the displayed dialog box, configure required details and click **OK**.

NOTE

- The template name can include 1 to 64 characters. It can contain only uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, hyphens (-), underscores (_), and periods (.).
- The template description consists of a maximum of 256 characters and cannot include line breaks or the following special characters: >!<"&'=

After the parameter template is exported, a new template is generated in the list on the **Parameter Templates** page.

• File: You can export the parameter template details (parameter names, values, and descriptions) of a DB instance to a CSV file for review and analysis.

In the displayed dialog box, enter the file name and click **OK**.

NOTE

The file name must start with a letter and can include 4 to 81 characters. It can contain only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_).

```
----End
```

4.9.5 Comparing Parameter Templates

Scenarios

This section describes how to compare two parameter templates of the same instance type and compatible API to learn about their configurations.

Comparing Parameter Templates

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane on the left, choose Parameter Templates.
- **Step 4** In the parameter template list, locate the parameter template that you created and click **Compare** in the **Operation** column.
- **Step 5** In the displayed dialog box, select a parameter template that is of the same instance type and compatible API as the selected template and click **OK**.

Figure 4-54 Comparing two parameter templates

Compare Para	meter Templates	×
Parameter Template	paramsGroup-3e72	~
		OK Cancel

- If their parameters are different, the different parameter names and values are displayed.
- If their parameters are the same, no data is displayed.

----End

Comparing Parameter Templates of an Instance

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Instances**.
- **Step 4** In the instance list, locate the instance whose parameter templates you want to compare and click its name.
- **Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameters** and then click **Compare** above the parameter list.
- **Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, select a parameter template that is of the same instance type as the template of current instance and click **OK**.

Х

Figure 4-55 Comparing the instance parameter template with another parameter template

Compare Para	meter lemplates	
Parameter Template	Default-NoSQL-MongoDB-4.0-ReplicaSet	~
	ОК	Cancel

- If their parameters are different, the different parameter names and values are displayed.
- If their parameters are the same, no data is displayed.

----End

4.9.6 Replicating a Parameter Template

Scenarios

You can replicate a parameter template you have created. When you have already created a parameter template and want to include most of the custom parameters and values from that template in a new parameter template, you can replicate that parameter template. You can also export a parameter template of a DB instance for future use.

Default parameter templates cannot be replicated. You can create parameter templates based on the default ones.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane on the left, choose Parameter Templates.
- **Step 4** On the **Parameter Templates** page, click the **Custom Templates** tab. Locate the target parameter template and click **Replicate** in the **Operation** column.

Alternatively, click the target DB instance on the **Instances** page. On the **Parameters** page, click **Export** to generate a new parameter template for future use.

Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, enter the parameter template name and description and click **OK**.

* Source Parameter Template	paramsGroup-3e72	
* New Parameter Template	paramsGroup-2191)
Description	Enter a parameter template description.)

- New Parameter Template: The template name can be up to 64 characters long. It can contain only uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, hyphens (-), underscores (_), and periods (.).
- **Description**: The description contains a maximum of 256 characters and cannot include line breaks or the following special characters >!<"&'=

After the parameter template is replicated, a new template is generated in the list on the **Parameter Template Management** page.

----End

4.9.7 Resetting a Parameter Template

Scenarios

You can reset all parameters in a custom parameter template to their default settings.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.
- **Step 4** On the **Parameter Templates** page, click the **Custom Templates** tab. Locate the target parameter template and choose **More** > **Reset** in the **Operation** column.
- **Step 5** Click **Yes** to reset the parameter template.

----End

4.9.8 Applying a Parameter Template

Scenarios

GeminiDB Mongo allows you to apply a parameter template. Modifications to parameters in a custom parameter template take effect only after you have applied the template to the target instance.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane on the left, choose Parameter Templates.
- **Step 4** On the **Parameter Templates** page, perform the following operations based on the template type:
 - To apply a default template, click **Default Templates**, locate the template, and in the **Operation** column, click **Apply**.
 - To apply a custom template, click **Custom Templates**, locate the template, and in the **Operation** column, choose **More** > **Apply**.

A parameter template can be applied to one or more instances.

Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, select one or more instances that the parameter template will be applied to and click **OK**.

After a parameter template is applied, you can view its application records.

----End

4.9.9 Viewing Application Records of a Parameter Template

Scenarios

GeminiDB Mongo allows you to view application records of a parameter template.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane on the left, choose Parameter Templates.
- Step 4 On the Parameter Templates page, locate the parameter template and choose More > View Application Record in the Operation column.

You can view the name or ID of the instance that the parameter template applies to, as well as the application status, application time, and causes of any failures that have occurred.

----End

4.9.10 Modifying a Parameter Template Description

Scenarios

You can modify the description of a custom parameter template if needed.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.
- **Step 4** On the **Parameter Templates** page, click the **Custom Templates** tab. Locate the target parameter template and click \checkmark in the **Description** column.
- **Step 5** Enter a new description. You can click \checkmark to submit or \times to cancel the modification.
 - After you submit the modification, you can view the new description in the **Description** column on the **Parameter Templates** page.
 - The description can include up to 256 characters but cannot contain the following special characters: >!<"&'=

----End

4.9.11 Deleting a Parameter Template

Scenarios

You can delete a custom parameter template that is no longer in use.

Precautions

- Deleted templates cannot be recovered, so exercise caution when performing this operation.
- Default parameter templates cannot be deleted.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.
- **Step 4** On the **Parameter Templates** page, click **Custom Templates**. Locate the parameter template you want to delete and choose **More** > **Delete** in the **Operation** column.
- **Step 5** Click **Yes** to delete the parameter template.

----End

4.10 Monitoring and Alarm Configuration

4.10.1 GeminiDB Mongo Metrics

Description

This section describes GeminiDB Mongo metrics reported to Cloud Eye as well as their namespaces and dimensions. You can use APIs provided by Cloud Eye to query the metrics of the monitored object and alarms generated.

Namespace

SYS.NoSQL

Metrics

NOTE

You can view metrics on instance nodes by referring to Viewing Metrics.

Table 4-16 GeminiDB	Mongo metrics
---------------------	---------------

Metric ID	Metric Name	Descriptio n	Value Range	Monitored Object	Monitorin g Period (Raw Data)
nosql001_c pu_usage	CPU Usage	CPU usage of the monitored system Unit: Percent	0–100	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
nosql002_ mem_usag e	Memory Usage	Memory usage of the monitored system Unit: Percent	0–100	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
nosql003_b ytes_out	Network Output Throughpu t	Outgoing traffic in bytes per second Unit: bytes/s	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute

Metric ID	Metric Name	Descriptio n	Value Range	Monitored Object	Monitorin g Period (Raw Data)
nosql004_b ytes_in	Network Input Throughpu t	Incoming traffic in bytes per second Unit: bytes/s	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
nosql005_d isk_usage	Storage Space Usage	Storage space usage of the monitored object. Unit: Percent	0–100 GeminiDB Mongo instances		1 minute
nosql006_d isk_total_si ze	Total Storage Space	Total storage space of the monitored object. Unit: GB	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instances	1 minute
nosql007_d isk_used_si ze	Used Storage Space	Used storage space of the monitored object. Unit: GB	≥ 0 GeminiDB Mongo instances		1 minute
mongodb0 01_comma nd_ps	COMMAN D Statements per Second	Number of COMMAN D statements executed per second Unit: count/s	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute

Metric ID	Metric Name	Descriptio n	Value Range	Monitored Object	Monitorin g Period (Raw Data)
mongodb0 02_delete_ ps	DELETE Statements per Second	Number of DELETE statements executed per second Unit: count/s	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
mongodb0 03_insert_p s	INSERT Statements per Second	Number of INSERT statements executed per second Unit: count/s	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
mongodb0 04_query_p s	QUERY Statements per Second	Number of QUERY statements executed per second Unit: count/s	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
mongodb0 05_update_ ps	UPDATE Statements per Second	Number of UPDATE statements executed per second Unit: count/s	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
mongodb0 06_getmor e_ps	GETMORE Statements per Second	Number of GETMORE statements executed per second Unit: count/s	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute

Metric ID	Metric Name	Descriptio n	Value Range	Monitored Object	Monitorin g Period (Raw Data)
mongodb0 07_connect ions	Current Active Connection s	Total number of connection s attempting to connect to DB instance nodes Unit: count	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
mongodb0 07_connect ions_usage	Percentage of Active Node Connection s	Percentage of the number of connection s that attempt to connect to the instance node to the total number of available connection s Unit: Percent	0-100	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
mongodb0 08_mem_re sident	Resident Memory	Size of resident memory The unit is MB.	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
mongodb0 09_mem_vi rtual	Virtual Memory	Size of the virtual memory The unit is MB.	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
mongodb0 10_regular _asserts_ps	Regular Asserts per Second	Number of regular asserts per second Unit: count/s	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute

Metric ID	Metric Name	Descriptio n	Value Range	Monitored Object	Monitorin g Period (Raw Data)
mongodb0 11_warnin g_asserts_p s	Warning Asserts per Second	Number of warning asserts per second Unit: count/s	ber of ≥ 0 Gemin ing ts per of d nodes t/s		1 minute
mongodb0 12_msg_as serts_ps	Message Asserts per Second	Number of message asserts per second Unit: count/s	≥ 0 GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes		1 minute
mongodb0 13_user_as serts_ps	User Asserts per Second	Number of user asserts per second Unit: count/s	iber of ≥ 0 GeminiDB Mongo instance nd nodes it/s		1 minute
mongodb0 14_queues_ total	Operations Queued Waiting for a Lock	Number of operations queued waiting for the lock Unit: count	≥ 0	≥ 0 GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	
mongodb0 15_queues_ readers	Operations Queued Waiting for a Read Lock	Number of operations queued waiting for the read lock Unit: count	≥ 0 GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes		1 minute
mongodb0 16_queues_ writers	Operations Queued Waiting for a Write Lock	Number of operations queued waiting for the write lock Unit: count	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute

Metric ID	Metric Name	Descriptio n	Value Range	Monitored Object	Monitorin g Period (Raw Data)
mongodb0 17_page_fa ults	Page Faults	Number of page faults on the monitored nodes Unit: count	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
mongodb0 18_porfling _num	Slow Queries	Number of slow queries on the monitored nodes Unit: count	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
mongodb0 19_cursors_ open	Maintained Cursors	Number of maintained cursors on the monitored nodes Unit: count	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute
mongodb0 20_cursors_ timeout	Timeout Cursors	Number of timed out cursors on the monitored nodes Unit: count	≥ 0	GeminiDB Mongo instance nodes	1 minute

Dimensions

Кеу	Value	
mongodb_cluster_id	ID of the GeminiDB Mongo instance	
mongodb_node_id	Node ID of the GeminiDB Mongo instance	

4.10.2 Configuring Alarm Rules

Scenarios

Setting alarm rules allows you to customize objects to be monitored and notification policies so that you can closely monitor your instances.

Alarm rules include the alarm rule name, instance, metric, threshold, monitoring interval, and whether to send notifications. This section describes how to set alarm rules.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 Click Service List. Under Management & Governance, click Cloud Eye.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Alarm Management** > **Alarm Rules**.
- Step 4 On the Alarm Rules page, click Create Alarm Rule.

Figure 4-57 Creating an alarm rule

Cloud Eye	Alarm Rules 💿			Feedback Visage Guide + Create Alarm Rule
Dashboard •				
Resource Groups				
Alarm Management				
Alarm Rules				
Alarm History				
Alarm Templates				
Cloud Service				
Custom Monitoring				
Event Monitoring	1 Resource	Cloud Eye sends multiple tensor of	3 Users locate the	4 Service
Data Dump	exceptions occur.	notifications.	them.	ensured.
		Country Allower De		

Step 5 Set alarm parameters.

1. Configure basic alarm information.

Figure 4-58 Configuring basic information for an alarm rule

* Name	alarm-cag2	
Description		
		0/256

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Name	Name of the rule. The system generates a random name and you can modify it.	alarm-cag2
Description	(Optional) Alarm rule description.	-

 Table 4-17 Basic alarm rule information

2. Select objects to be monitored and specify the monitoring scope.

Table 4-18 Parameter description

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Alarm Type	Alarm type that the alarm rule is created for. The value can be Metric or Event .	Metric
Resource Type	Type of the resource the alarm rule is created for. Select GeminiDB .	-
Dimension	Metric dimension of the alarm rule. Select MongoDB-MongoDB node .	-
Monitoring Scope	 Monitoring scope the alarm rule applies to. NOTE If you select All resources, an alarm notification will be sent when any instance meets an alarm policy, and existing alarm rules will be automatically applied for newly purchased resources. If you select Resource groups and any resource in the group meets the alarm policy, an alarm notification will be sent. To specify Specific resources, click Select Specified Resources, select one or more resources, and click OK. 	All Resources
Group	This parameter is mandatory when Monitoring Scope is set to Resource groups.	-

3. Configure an alarm policy.

Figure 4-59 Configuring the alarm policy

* Menou	Associate template	use existing template	Collegie Halibaly	
* Alarm Pol	licy			
	Metric Name	Alarm Policy		Alarm Severity Operation
	If Storage Space Us •	Raw data 👻 >=	▼ 80 % 3 times (consecutively) ▼ Then Every 10 minutes ▼	Major 👻 Delete
Ø	If CPU Usage 👻	Raw data 💌 🖂	▼ 80 % 3 times (consecutively) ▼ Then Every 10 minutes ▼	Major 👻 Delete
	If Memory Usage 💌	Raw data 💌 🖂	▼ 80 % 3 times (consecutively) ▼ Then Every 10 minutes ▼	Major 👻 Delete
٠	Add Alarm Policy You can add 47 more.			

Table 4-19 Parameter description

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Method	Select Associate template , Use existing template , or Configure manually .	Configure manually
	NOTE If you set Monitoring Scope to Specific resources, you can set Method to Use existing template.	
Template	Select the template to be used.	-
	This parameter is available only when you set Method to Use existing template .	

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Alarm Policy	 Policy for triggering an alarm. You can configure the threshold, consecutive periods, alarm interval, and alarm severity based on service requirements. Metric Name: specifies the the metric that the alarm rule is created for. The following metrics are recommended: 	Take the CPU usage as an example. The alarm policy configured in Figure 4-59 indicates that a major
	Storage Space Usage,	alarm will be
	which is used to monitor the storage usage of GeminiDB Cassandra instances. If the storage usage is greater than 80%, scale up the storage in a timely manner by referring to Scaling Up Storage Space .	sent to users every 10 minutes if the original CPU usage reaches
	CPU Usage and Memory Usage,	80% or above
	which are used to monitor the compute resource usage of each GeminiDB Cassandra instance node. If the CPU usage or memory usage is greater than 80%, you can add nodes or upgrade node specifications in a timely manner.	consecutive periods.
	For more metrics, see GeminiDB Mongo Metrics.	
	 Alarm Severity: specifies the severity of the alarm. Valid values are Critical, Major, Minor, and Informational. 	
	NOTE A maximum of 50 alarm policies can be added to an alarm rule. If any one of these alarm policies is met, an alarm is triggered.	

4. Configure alarm notification information.

Figure 4-60 Configuring alarm notification information

Alarm Notification	
* Notification Recipient	Notification group Topic subscription
* Notification Group	-Select- C
+ Notification Window	you create notification group, you must click retresh to make it available for selection. After you create the notification group, click Add Notification Ubject in the Operation column of the notification group is to add not
* Trigger Condition	Cenerald alarm Cenerald alarm

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Alarm Notification	Whether to notify users when alarms are triggered. Notifications can be sent by email, text message, or HTTP/ HTTPS message. Enabling alarm notification is recommended. When the metric data reaches the threshold set in the alarm rule, Cloud Eye immediately notifies you through SMN that an exception has occurred.	Enabled Alarm Notification.
Notification Recipient	Select Notification group or Topic subscription.	-
Notification Group	Notification group the alarm notification is to be sent to.	-
Notification Object	 Specifies the object that receives alarm notifications. You can select the account contact or a topic. Account contact is the mobile phone number and email address provided for registration. Topic is used to publish messages and subscribe to notifications. If the required topic is unavailable, create one first and add subscriptions to it. For details, see Creating a Topic and Adding Subscriptions. 	-
Notification Window	Cloud Eye sends notifications only within the notification window specified in the alarm rule. For example, if Notification Window is set to 00:00-8:00 , Cloud Eye sends notifications only within 00:00-08:00.	-

Table 4-20 Parameter description

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Trigger Condition	Condition for triggering an alarm notification. You can select Generated alarm (when an alarm is generated), Cleared alarm (when an alarm is cleared), or both.	-

5. Configure advanced settings.

Figure 4-61 Advanced settings

Advanced Settings	Enterprise Project Tag
* Enterprise Project	default C Create Enterprise Project
	The enterprise project the alarm rule belongs to.
Tag	It is recommended that you use TMS's predefined tag function to add the same tag to different cloud resources. View predefined tags $$ C
	To add a tag, enter a tag key and a tag value below.
	Enter a tag key Enter a tag value Add
	20 tags available for addition.

Table 4-21 Parameter description

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Enterprise Project	Enterprise project that the alarm rule belongs to. Only users with the enterprise project permissions can view and manage the alarm rule. For details about how to create an enterprise project, see Creating an Enterprise Project .	default
Tag	A tag is a key-value pair. Tags identify cloud resources so that you can easily categorize and search for your resources. You are advised to create predefined tags on TMS. For details about how to create predefined tags, see Creating Predefined Tags .	-
	 A key can contain a maximum of 128 characters, and a value can contain a maximum of 225 characters. 	
	– A maximum of 20 tags can be added.	

Step 6 After the configuration is complete, click **Create**.

When the metric data reaches the threshold set in the alarm rule, Cloud Eye immediately notifies you through SMN that an exception has occurred.

----End

4.10.3 Viewing Metrics

Scenarios

Cloud Eye monitors statuses of GeminiDB Mongo instances. You can view GeminiDB Mongo metrics on the management console.

Monitored data requires a period of time for transmission and display. The status of the monitored object displayed on the Cloud Eye page is the status obtained 5 to 10 minutes before. You can view the monitored data of a newly created DB instance 5 to 10 minutes later.

Precautions

- The DB instance is running properly.
 - Cloud Eye does not display the metrics of a faulty or deleted DB instance. You can view the monitoring information only after the instance is restarted or recovered.
- The DB instance has been properly running for at least 10 minutes. The monitoring data and graphics are available for a new instance after the instance runs for at least 10 minutes.

Method 1

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instance Management** page, locate the target instance and click its name.
- **Step 4** In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **View Metric** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 4-62 Querying monitoring metrics

Delete Node Add Node						
Name/ID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	EIP	Operation
	Primary	Available	az3		Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP
	Secondary	Available	az3		Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP
	Secondary	 Available 	823		O Unbound	View Metric Bind EIP

Step 5 In the monitoring area, you can select a duration to view the monitoring data. You can view the monitoring data of the service in the last 1, 3, or 12 hours.

To view the monitoring curve in a longer time range, click \sum to enlarge the graph.

----End

Node Information

Method 2

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** On the **Instance Management** page, locate the target instance and click its name.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Advanced O&M**.
- Step 5 On the Advanced O&M page, click the Real-Time Monitoring tab.
- **Step 6** Select a node from the **Node** drop-down list, select the duration, and enable **Auto Refresh** to view the real-time monitoring data.

Figure 4-63 Viewing metrics

Real-Time Monitoring Alarms							
DB Instance Node-level Metrics							
Node							
Node Name		Node ID		Status 📀 Available			
1h 3h	12h	Auto Refresh					C
CPU Usage ③		Memory Usage ③		Storage Space Usage ③		Percentage of Active Node Con	
%	Max Min 54.4231.03	5	Max Min 22.420.6	%	MaxMin 0 0	%	MaxMin 3.2.5
100 100 40 40 40 10 10 1442 1450 1458 1506 1514 1522 1 1522 1	VV-V 5:30 15:38	100 60 40 20 0 14.42 14.50 14.58 15.06 15.14 15.22 15.0	10 15:38	100 80 40 40 20 0 1442 1450 1458 1506 1514 1	5.22 15:30 15:38	100 80 	5:30 15:38

- You can view the monitoring data of the service in the last 1, 3, or 12 hours.
- The monitoring data on the current page is collected every 60 seconds.
- The current page displays only the monitoring data of common metrics, such as the CPU usage, memory usage, and storage usage. If you want to view more metrics, click **View details** to go to the Cloud Eye console.
- ----End

4.10.4 Event Monitoring

4.10.4.1 Introduction to Event Monitoring

Event monitoring provides event data reporting, query, and alarm reporting. You can create alarm rules for both system and custom events. When a specific event occurs, Cloud Eye generates and sends an alarm for you.

Key operations on GeminiDB Mongo resources are monitored and recorded by Cloud Eye as events. Events include operations performed by specific users on specific resources, such as changing instance names and specifications.

Event monitoring provides an API for reporting custom events, which helps you collect and report abnormal events or important change events generated by services to Cloud Eye.

Event monitoring is enabled by default and allows you to view monitoring details of system events and custom events. For details about system events, see **Events Supported by Event Monitoring**.

4.10.4.2 Viewing Event Monitoring Data

Scenarios

Event monitoring provides event data reporting, query, and alarm reporting. You can create alarm rules for both system and custom events. When a specific event occurs, Cloud Eye generates and sends an alarm for you.

Event monitoring is enabled by default. You can view monitoring details about system events and custom events.

This topic describes how to view the event monitoring data.

Procedure

Step 1 Log in to the management console.

- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Mongo API**.
- **Step 3** You can view event monitoring data in either of the following ways:
 - In the navigation tree on the left, choose **Advanced O&M**, and then click the **Real-Time Monitoring** tab. Select a node from the **Node** drop-down list, select the duration, and enable **Auto Refresh** to view the real-time monitoring data.
 - In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **View Metric** in the **Operation** column.

Step 4 Click [<] to return to the Cloud Eye console.

Step 5 In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Event Monitoring**.

On the displayed **Event Monitoring** page, all system events generated in the last 24 hours are displayed by default.

You can also click **1h**, **3h**, **12h**, **1d**, **7d**, or **30d** to view events generated in different time periods.

Step 6 Locate an event and click View Event in the Operation column to view its details.

----End

4.10.4.3 Creating an Alarm Rule for Event Monitoring

Scenarios

This topic describes how to create an alarm rule for event monitoring.

Procedure

Step 1 Log in to the management console.

Step 2 Click — in the upper left corner of the page. Under Management & Governance, click Cloud Eye.

Step 3 In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Event Monitoring**.

Step 4 On the event list page, click **Create Alarm Rule** in the upper right corner.

Step 5 On the **Create Alarm Rule** page, configure the parameters.

Parameter	Description
Name	Specifies the name of the alarm rule. The system generates a random name, but you can change it if needed.
Description	(Optional) Provides supplementary information about the alarm rule.
Enterprise Project	You can select an existing enterprise project or click Create Enterprise Project to create one.
Alarm Type	Specifies the alarm type corresponding to the alarm rule.
Event Type	Specifies the event type of the metric corresponding to the alarm rule.
Event Source	Specifies the service the event is generated for. Select GeminiDB.
Monitoring Scope	Specifies the monitoring scope for event monitoring.
Method	Specifies the event creation method.
Alarm Policy	Event Name indicates the instantaneous operations users performed on system resources, such as login and logout. For details about events supported by Event Monitoring, see
	You can select a trigger mode and alarm severity as needed.

Table 4-22 Parameter description

Click **C** to enable alarm notification. The validity period is 24 hours by default. If the topics you require are not displayed in the drop-down list, click **Create an SMN topic**.

Table 4-23 Alarm not	ification parameters
----------------------	----------------------

Parameter	Description
Alarm Notification	Specifies whether to notify users when alarms are triggered. Notifications can be sent by email, text message, or HTTP/ HTTPS message.

Parameter	Description
Notification Object	Specifies the object an alarm notification is to be sent to. You can select the account contact or a topic.
	• Account contact is the mobile phone number and email address provided for registration.
	• Topic is used to publish messages and subscribe to notifications. If the required topic is unavailable, create one first and add subscriptions to it. For details, see Creating a Topic and Adding Subscriptions .
Validity Period	Cloud Eye sends notifications only within the validity period specified in the alarm rule.
	If you set Validity Period to 08:00-20:00 , Cloud Eye sends notifications only within 08:00-20:00.
Trigger Condition	Specifies the condition for triggering the alarm notification.

Step 6 After the configuration is complete, click **Create**.

----End

4.10.4.4 Events Supported by Event Monitoring

Event Sourc e	Event Name	Event ID	Eve nt Sev erit y	Description	Solution	lmpa ct
NoSQ L	Instance creation failure	NoSQL Createl nstance Failed	Maj or	The instance quota or underlying resources are insufficient.	Release the instances that are no longer used and try to provision them again, or submit a service ticket to adjust the quota.	Instan ces fail to be create d.

Table 4-24 Events Supported by Event Monitoring for GeminiDB

Event Sourc e	Event Name	Event ID	Eve nt Sev erit y	Description	Solution	lmpa ct
	Specificati ons change failure	NoSQL Resizel nstance Failed	Maj or	The underlying resources are insufficient.	Submit a service ticket to ask O&M personnel to coordinate resources, and then try again.	Servic es are interr upted.
	Node adding failure	NoSQL AddNo desFail ed	Maj or	The underlying resources are insufficient.	Submit a service ticket to ask O&M personnel to coordinate resources, delete the node that failed to be added, and add a new one.	None
	Node deletion failure	NoSQL Delete NodesF ailed	Maj or	Releasing underlying resources failed.	Delete the node again.	None
	Storage space scale-up failure	NoSQL ScaleU pStorag eFailed	Maj or	The underlying resources are insufficient.	Submit a service ticket to ask O&M personnel to coordinate resources, and then try again.	Servic es may be interr upted.
	Password resetting failure	NoSQL ResetPa ssword Failed	Maj or	Resetting the password times out.	Reset the password again.	None
	Parameter template change failure	NoSQL Updatel nstance Param GroupF ailed	Maj or	Changing a parameter template times out.	Change the parameter template again.	None

Event Sourc e	Event Name	Event ID	Eve nt Sev erit y	Description	Solution	lmpa ct
	Backup policy configurat ion failure	NoSQL SetBack upPolic yFailed	Maj or	The database connection is abnormal.	Configure the backup policy again.	None
	Manual backup creation failure	NoSQL Create Manual Backup Failed	Maj or	The backup files fail to be exported or uploaded.	Submit a service ticket to O&M personnel.	Data canno t be backe d up.
	Automate d backup creation failure	NoSQL CreateA utomat edBack upFaile d	Maj or	The backup files fail to be exported or uploaded.	Submit a service ticket to O&M personnel.	Data canno t be backe d up.
	Instance status abnormal	NoSQL FaultyD BInstan ce	Maj or	This event is a key alarm event and is reported when an instance is faulty due to a disaster or a server failure.	Submit a service ticket.	The datab ase servic e may be unava ilable.
	Instance status recovery	NoSQL DBInsta nceRec overed	Maj or	If a disaster occurs, NoSQL provides an HA tool to automatically or manually rectify the fault. After the fault is rectified, this event is reported.	No further action is required.	None
	Node status abnormal	NoSQL FaultyD BNode	Maj or	This event is a key alarm event and is reported when a database node is faulty due to a disaster or a server failure.	Check whether the database service is available and submit a service ticket.	The datab ase servic e may be unava ilable.

Event Sourc e	Event Name	Event ID	Eve nt Sev erit y	Description	Solution	lmpa ct
	Node status recovery	NoSQL DBNod eRecov ered	Maj or	If a disaster occurs, NoSQL provides an HA tool to automatically or manually rectify the fault. After the fault is rectified, this event is reported.	No further action is required.	None
	Primary/ standby switchove r or failover	NoSQL Primary Standb ySwitch ed	Maj or	This event is reported when a primary/ secondary switchover or a failover is triggered.	No further action is required.	None
	Occurrenc e of hotspot partitionin g keys	HotKey Occurs	Maj or	Hotspot data is stored in one partition because the primary key is improper. Improper application design causes frequent read and write operations on a key.	 Choose a proper partition key. Add service cache so that service applications read hotspot data from the cache first. 	The servic e reque st succes s rate is affect ed, and the cluste r perfor manc e and stabili ty deteri orates

Event Sourc e	Event Name	Event ID	Eve nt Sev erit y	Description	Solution	lmpa ct
	BigKey occurrenc e	BigKey Occurs	Maj or	The primary key design is improper. There are too many records or too much data in a single partition, causing load imbalance on nodes.	 Choose a proper partition key. Add a new partition key for hashing data. 	As more and more data is stored in the partiti on, cluste r stabili ty deteri orates
	Insufficien t storage space	NoSQL RiskyDa taDiskU sage	Maj or	The storage space is insufficient.	Scale up storage space. For details, see section "Scaling Up Storage Space" in the user guide of GeminiDB.	The instan ce is set to read- only and data canno t be writte n to the instan ce.
	Data disk expanded and being writable	NoSQL DataDi skUsag eRecov ered	Maj or	The data disk has been expanded and becomes writable.	No further action is required.	None

Event Sourc e	Event Name	Event ID	Eve nt Sev erit y	Description	Solution	lmpa ct
	Index creation failure	NoSQL Createl ndexFai led	Maj or	The service load exceeds what the instance specifications can take. In this case, creating indexes consumes more instance resources. As a result, the response is slow or even frame freezing occurs, and the creation times out.	Select matched instance specifications based on service load. Create indexes during off- peak hours. Create indexes in the background. Select indexes as required.	The index fails to be create d or is incom plete. Delet e the index and create a new one.
	Write speed decrease	NoSQL Stalling Occurs	Maj or	The write speed is close to the maximum write speed allowed by the cluster scale and instance specifications. As a result, the database flow control mechanism is triggered, and requests may fail.	 Adjust the cluster scale or node specifications based on the maximum write rate of services. Measure the maximum write rate of services. 	The succes s rate of servic e reque sts is affect ed.

Event Sourc e	Event Name	Event ID	Eve nt Sev erit y	Description	Solution	lmpa ct
	Data write stopped	NoSQL Stoppin gOccur s	Maj or	The data write is too fast, reaching the maximum write capability allowed by the cluster scale and instance specifications. As a result, the database flow control mechanism is triggered, and requests may fail.	 Change the cluster scale or node specifications based on the maximum write rate of services. Measure the maximum write rate of services. 	The succes s rate of servic e reque sts is affect ed.
	Database restart failure	NoSQL Restart DBFaile d	Maj or	The instance status is abnormal.	Submit a service ticket to O&M personnel.	The instan ce status may be abnor mal.
	Restoratio n to new instance failure	NoSQL Restore ToNewl nstance Failed	Maj or	The underlying resources are insufficient.	Submit a service ticket to ask O&M personnel to coordinate resources, and then add new nodes.	Data canno t be restor ed to a new instan ce.
	Restoratio n to existing instance failure	NoSQL Restore ToExistI nstance Failed	Maj or	The backup file fails to be downloaded or restored.	Submit a service ticket to O&M personnel.	The curren t instan ce may be unava ilable.

Event Sourc e	Event Name	Event ID	Eve nt Sev erit y	Description	Solution	lmpa ct
	Backup file deletion failure	NoSQL DeleteB ackupF ailed	Maj or	The backup files fail to be deleted from OBS.	Delete the backup files again.	None
	Failure to display slow query logs in plaintext	NoSQL SwitchS lowlog PlainTe xtFailed	Maj or	The DB API does not support this function.	Refer to the GeminiDB User Guide to check whether that the DB API supports the display of slow query logs in plaintext. Submit a service ticket to O&M personnel.	None
	EIP binding failure	NoSQL BindEip Failed	Maj or	The node status is abnormal, an EIP has been bound to the node, or the EIP to be bound is invalid.	Check whether the node is normal and whether the EIP is valid.	The instan ce canno t be access ed from a public netwo rk.
	EIP unbinding failure	NoSQL Unbind EipFaile d	Maj or	The node status is abnormal or the EIP has been unbound from the node.	Check whether the node and EIP status are normal.	None
Event Sourc e	Event Name	Event ID	Eve nt Sev erit y	Description	Solution	lmpa ct
---------------------	--	--	-------------------------------	---	--	---
	Parameter modificati on failure	NoSQL Modify Parame terFaile d	Maj or	The parameter value is invalid.	Check whether the parameter value is within the valid range and submit a service ticket to O&M personnel.	None
	Parameter template applicatio n failure	NoSQL ApplyP aramet erGrou pFailed	Maj or	The instance status is abnormal. So, the parameter template cannot be applied.	Submit a service ticket to O&M personnel.	None
	Enabling or disabling SSL failure	NoSQL SwitchS SLFaile d	Maj or	Enabling or disabling SSL times out.	Try again or submit a service ticket. Do not change the connection mode.	The SSL conne ction mode canno t be chang ed.

Event Sourc e	Event Name	Event ID	Eve nt Sev erit y	Description	Solution	lmpa ct
	Too much data in a single row	LargeR owOcc urs	Maj or	If there is too much data in a single row, queries may time out, causing faults like OOM error.	 Limit the write length of each column and row so that the key and value length of each row does not exceed the preset threshold. Check whether there are abnormal writes or coding, causing large rows. 	If there are too many record s in a single row, cluste r stabili ty will deteri orate as the data volum e increa ses.

4.11 Audit

4.11.1 Key Operations Supported by CTS

With CTS, you can record GeminiDB Mongo key operations for later query, audit, and backtracking.

Operation	Resource Type	Trace Name
Creating an instance	instance	NoSQLCreateInstance
Deleting an instance	instance	NoSQLDeleteInstance
Restarting an instance	instance	NoSQLRestartInstance
Restoring data to a new instance	instance	NoSQLRestoreNewInstance
Scaling up storage space	instance	NoSQLExtendInstanceVo- lume

 Table 4-25
 GeminiDB
 Mongo
 key
 operations

Operation	Resource Type	Trace Name
Resetting the password of an instance	instance	NoSQLResetPassword
Changing the name of an instance	instance	NoSQLRenameInstance
Changing specifications	instance	NoSQLResizeInstance
Binding an EIP	instance	NoSQLBindEIP
Unbinding an EIP	instance	NoSQLUnBindEIP
Freezing an instance	instance	NoSQLFreezeInstance
Unfreezing an instance	instance	NoSQLUnfreezeInstance
Creating a backup	backup	NoSQLCreateBackup
Deleting a backup	backup	NoSQLDeleteBackup
Modifying the backup policy of an instance	backup	NoSQLSetBackupPolicy
Adding an instance tag	tag	NoSQLAddTags
Modifying an instance tag	tag	NoSQLModifyInstanceTag
Deleting an instance tag	tag	NoSQLDeleteInstanceTag
Creating a parameter template	parameterGroup	NoSQLCreateConfigurations
Modifying a parameter template	parameterGroup	NoSQLUpdateConfigura- tions
Modifying instance parameters	parameterGroup	NoSQLUpdateInstanceConfi- gurations
Replicating a parameter template	parameterGroup	NoSQLCopyConfigurations
Resetting a parameter template	parameterGroup	NoSQLResetConfigurations
Applying a parameter template	parameterGroup	NoSQLApplyConfigurations
Deleting a parameter template	parameterGroup	NoSQLDeleteConfigurations
Enabling SSL	instance	NoSQLSwitchSSL
Changing the security group of an instance	instance	NoSQLModifySecurityGroup
Restoring data to an existing instance	backup	NoSQLRestoreOldInstance

Operation	Resource Type	Trace Name
Exporting parameter template information for an instance	instance	NoSQLSaveConfigurations
Modifying the recycling policy	instance	NoSQLModifyRecyclePolicy

4.11.2 Querying Traces

After CTS is enabled, CTS starts recording operations on cloud resources. The CTS console stores the last seven days of operation records.

This section describes how to query the last seven days of operation records on the CTS console.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** Click ¹ in the upper left corner and select a region and project.
- Step 3 Click Service List. Under Management & Governance, click Cloud Trace Service.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, click **Trace List**.
- **Step 5** Specify filter criteria to search for the required traces. The following four filter criteria are available:
 - Trace Source, Resource Type, and Search By

Select filters from the drop-down list.

When you select **Trace name** for **Search By**, you need to select a specific trace name.

When you select **Resource ID** for **Search By**, you also need to select or enter a specific resource ID.

When you select **Resource name** for **Search By**, you also need to select or enter a specific resource name.

- **Operator**: Select a specific operator (a user other than the tenant).
- Trace Status: Select All trace statuses, Normal, Warning, or Incident.
- **Start Date** and **End Date**: You can specify a time range to query traces.
- **Step 6** Locate the required trace and click \vee on the left of the trace to view details.
- **Step 7** Click **View Trace** in the **Operation** column. In the displayed dialog box, the trace structure details are displayed.

----End

4.12 Log Management

4.12.1 Enabling or Disabling Log Reporting

Scenarios

If you enable log reporting for your GeminiDB Mongo instance, new logs generated for the instance will be uploaded to Log Tank Service (LTS).

Precautions

- To use this function, you need to contact customer service to apply for required permissions.
- You will be billed for enabling this function.
- Ensure that there are available LTS log groups and log streams in the same region as your instance.

For more information about log groups and log streams, see **Log Management**.

Enabling Log Reporting to LTS in Batches

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **Log Reporting**.
- **Step 4** Select one or more instances and click **Enable Log Reporting**.
- Step 5 Select an LTS log group and log stream and click OK.

D NOTE

- After this function is enabled, audit logs record all requests sent to your DB instance and are stored in LTS.
- This function does not take effect immediately. There is a delay of about 10 minutes.
- You will be billed for enabling this function. For details, see LTS pricing details.
- After this function is enabled, all audit policies are reported by default.
- If Audit Policy is enabled, LTS reuses the audit policy set for your DB instance and you will also be billed for reporting audit logs to LTS. (Only after you disable Audit Policy, the fee will be terminated.)
- If you enable audit log reporting to LTS for an instance with the **Audit Policy** toggle switch turned on, you can turn off this switch only when the instance status becomes available.

 \times

Figure 4-64 Enabling log reporting

Enable Log Reporting

 Logs record all requests sent to your DB instance and are stored in Log Tank Service (LTS). This request does not take effect immediately. There is a delay of about 10 minutes. You will be billed for log reporting. After this function is enabled, all audit policies are reported by default. If Audit Policy is enabled, LTS reuses the audit policy set for your DB instance and you will also be billed for reporting audit logs to LTS. (Only after you disable Audit Policy, the fee will be terminated.) If you enable audit log reporting to LTS for an instance with the Audit Policy toggle switch turned on, you can turn off this switch only when the instance status becomes available. 										
Log Type	Audit log									
Report Audit Lo	gs to LTS									
★ Log Group	✓ Q View Log Groups									
★ Log Stream	~ Q									
	ОК Сало	cel								

- **Step 6** To disable log reporting, select one or more instances and click **Disable Log Reporting**.
- **Step 7** In the displayed dialog box, click **OK**.

Figure 4-65 Disabling log reporting

Disable Log Reporting	^
If log reporting is disabled, logs generated for the DB instance will not be reported to Log Tank Service (LTS). This request does not take effect immediately. There is a delay of about 10 minutes.	
Log Type 💿 Audit log	
OK Cancel	
End	

4.12.2 Slow Query Logs

Scenarios

GeminiDB Mongo API allows you to view slow query logs of databases. The unit of the execution time is ms. You can identify the SQL statements that take a long time to execute and tune them based on slow query logs.

Showing Original Logs

NOTE

- After Show Original Log is enabled, it cannot be disabled.
- After Show Original Log is enabled, original logs are displayed. The original slow query logs are displayed for your query and retained for 30 days.
- If the instance to which the slow query log belongs is deleted, related logs are also deleted after Show Original Log is enabled.
- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose original logs you want to view and click its name.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Slow Query Logs**.
- Step 5 On the Slow Query Logs page, click 🔾
- **Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes** to enable the function of slowing original logs.

----End

Viewing and Exporting Log Details

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose slow query logs you want to view and click its name.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Slow Query Logs**.
- **Step 5** On the **Slow Query Logs** page, set search criteria and click **Search** to view log information.
 - Select **All nodes** and view slow query logs of all nodes. Alternatively, select a specific node to view its slow query logs.
 - View slow query logs of a specific node in different time ranges.
 - View slow query logs of the following types of SQL statements:
 - All SQL statement types
 - SELECT
 - QUERY

- UPDATE
- REMOVE
- GETMORE
- COMMAND
- KILLCURSORS
- **Step 6** On the **Log Details** page, click \square in the upper right corner of the log list to export log details.
 - You can view the exported CSV file to your local PC.
 - Up to 2,000 logs can be exported at a time.

----End

4.12.3 Error Logs

Scenarios

GeminiDB Mongo API allows you to view error logs of databases, including warning logs and error logs generated during database running, helping you analyze system issues.

Precautions

This function is in the open beta test (OBT) phase. To use it, contact customer service.

Viewing and Exporting Log Details

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose error logs you want to view and click its name.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Error Logs**.
- **Step 5** On the displayed page, click the **Log Details** tab and view log details.

You can view error logs of all nodes or a specific node.

- Select **All nodes** and view error logs of all nodes. Alternatively, select a specific node to view its error logs.
- Select a specific node and view its error logs.
- View error logs of a specific node in different time ranges.
- Choose to view the following levels of error logs:
 - All log levels
 - WARNING
 - ERROR
- **Step 6** On the **Log Details** page, click \square in the upper right corner of the log list to export log details.

- You can view the exported CSV file to your local PC.
- Up to 2,000 logs can be exported at a time.

----End

4.13 Billing Management

4.13.1 Renewing Instances

This section describes how to renew your yearly/monthly GeminiDB Mongo instances.

Precautions

Pay-per-use GeminiDB Mongo instances cannot be renewed.

Renewing a Yearly/Monthly Instance

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance that you want to renew and click **Renew** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 4-66 Renewal button

Name/ID \varTheta	DB Instance	Compatible	Stor	Status 🖯	Specifications	Storage Spac	е	Load balan	Enterprise	Billing Mode	Operation
	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0		Available		0%	0/100GB	-	default	Yearly/Monthly	Renew Change to Pay-per-Use More ~

Alternatively, click the instance name to go to the **Basic Information** page. In the **Billing Information** area, click **Renew** next to the **Billing Mode** field.

Figure 4-67 Renewal button

Billing Information	
Billing Mode	Yearly/Monthly Renew
Order	
Created	Jul 01, 2024 17:33:26 GMT+08:00

Step 4 On the displayed page, renew the instance.

----End

Renewing Instances in Batches

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, select the instances that you want to renew and click **Renew** above the instance list.

Figure 4-68 Renewing instances in batches

Auto Scale Renew	cale Renew Change to Yearly Monthly Change to Pay-per-Use Unoubscribe Upprode Minor Version											
All projects	• (a				Add filter							× 1 (5) (6) (6)
NameID ⊖	DE	B Instance	Compatible	Stor	Status Θ	Specifications	Storage Spac	9	Load balan	Enterprise	Billing Mode	Operation
	Re	eplica set	MongoDB 4.0		Available		0%	0/100GB	-	default	Yearly/Monthly	Renew Change to Pay-per-Use. More ~
	Re	eplica set	MongoDB 4.0		Available		0%	0/100GB	-	default	Yearly/Monthly	Renew Change to Pay-per-Use More ~

Step 4 In the displayed dialog box, click Yes.

----End

4.13.2 Changing the Billing Mode from Pay-per-Use to Yearly/ Monthly

This section describes how to change the billing mode of a GeminiDB Mongo instance from pay-per-use to yearly/monthly. If you want to use a pay-per-use instance for a long time, change its billing mode to yearly/monthly to reduce costs.

Precautions

Only when the status of a pay-per-use DB instance is **Available**, its billing mode can be changed to yearly/monthly.

Changing the Billing Mode of a Single Instance

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose billing mode you to change and click **Change to Yearly/Monthly** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 4-69 Changing the billing mode of a single instance

Humano V	00 motoriovini	Companyor III	00001111	oundo V	opeenreacents	otorage oper	~	COOD DOMININ	Cincipitor III	Criming modes	operation		
	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0		Available		0%	0/100GB		EPS_TEST	Pay-per-Use Created on J	Change to Yearly/Monthly	Change Specifications	More

Step 4 On the displayed page, select the renewal duration in month. The minimum duration is one month.

Confirm the settings and click Pay Now.

Step 5 Select a payment method and click **Pay**.

Step 6 View the results on the **Instances** page.

In the upper right corner of the instance list, click C to refresh the list. The instance status will become **Available** after the change is successful. The billing mode becomes to **Yearly/Monthly**.

----End

Changing the Billing Mode of Multiple Instance in Batches

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 On the Instances page, select the instances whose billing mode you want to change and click Change to Yearly/Monthly above the instance list. In displayed dialog box, click Yes.

Figure 4-70 Changing the billing mode of multiple instances

Auto Scate Renew (Change to Yearty/Monthy) Change to Pay-per-Use Unsubscabe Upgrade Minor Version											
All projects				< Add filter X (3)							30
Name/ID ⊖	DB Instance	Compatible Sto	r Status ⊖	Specifications	Storage Space	Load balan	Enterprise	Billing Mode	Operation		
0	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0	Available		0% 0/1003B	-	EPS_TEST	Pay-per-Use Created on J	Change to Yearly/Monthly	Change Specifications	More ~
	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0	Available		0% 0/100GB	-	EPS_TEST	Pay-per-Use Created on J	Change to Yearly/Monthly	Change Specifications	More ~

Step 4 On the displayed page, select how many months you want to renew the instance for. The minimum duration is one month.

Confirm the settings and click **Pay Now**.

- **Step 5** Select a payment method and click **Pay**.
- **Step 6** View the results on the **Instances** page.

In the upper right corner of the instance list, click \bigcirc to refresh the list. The instance status will become **Available** after the change is successful. The billing mode changes to **Yearly/Monthly**.

----End

4.13.3 Changing the Billing Mode from Yearly/Monthly to Payper-Use

You can change the billing mode of a GeminiDB Mongo instance from yearly/ monthly to pay-per-use and then pay only for the actual usage of your resources.

Precautions

The billing mode of a yearly/monthly instance can only be changed to pay-per-use when the instance is in the **Available** status.

Changing the Billing Mode of a Single Instance to Pay-per-Use

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance whose billing mode you want to change and click **Change to Pay-per-Use** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 4-71 Changing from yearly/monthly to pay-per-use

() NameID 😔	DB Instance	Compatible	Stor	Status 🖯	Specifications	Storage Spac	e	Load balan	Enterprise	Billing Mode	Operation
		Replica set	MongoDB 4.0		Available		0%	0/100GB	-	default	Yearly/Monthly	Renew Change to Pay-per-Use More ~

Step 4 On the displayed page, confirm the instance information and click **Change to Payper-Use**. The billing mode will change to pay-per-use after the instance expires.

NOTICE

Auto renewal will be disabled after the billing mode of your instances change to pay-per-use. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

- **Step 5** After you submit the change, check whether a message is displayed in the **Billing Mode** column, indicating that the billing mode will be changed to pay-per-use after the instance expires.
- Step 6 To cancel the change, choose Billing > Renewal to enter the Billing Center. On the Renewals page, locate the instance and click More > Cancel Change to Payper-Use.
- Step 7 In the displayed dialog box, click Yes.

----End

Changing the Billing Mode of Multiple Instances to Pay-per-use

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, select the instances whose billing mode you want to change and click **Change to Pay-per-Use** above the instance list.

Figure 4-72 Changing the billing mode of multiple instances to pay-per-use

Auto Scale Renew	Change to Yearly/Monthly Cha	nge to Pay-per-Use 🔵 🔍 U	subscribe Upgrade Mino	r Version					
All projects	Compatible API: Mongol	DB × Instance name: bulk >	Add filter						× (9) (C) (B)
Name1D ⊖	DB Instance	Compatible Stor	Status 🖯 Sp	ecifications Storage Sp	1909	Load balan	Enterprise	Billing Mode	Operation
•	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0	Available	0%	0/100GB	-	default	Yearly/Monthly	Renew Change to Pay-per-Use More ~
	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0	Available	0%	0/100GB	-	detault	Yearly/Monthly	Renew Change to Pay-per-Use More ~

- **Step 4** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.
- **Step 5** On the displayed page, confirm the instance information and click **Change to Payper-Use**. The billing mode will change to pay-per-use after the instance expires.

NOTICE

Auto renewal will be disabled after the billing mode of your instances change to pay-per-use. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

- **Step 6** After you submit the change, check whether a message is displayed in the **Billing Mode** column, indicating that the billing mode will be changed to pay-per-use after the instance expires.
- Step 7 To cancel the change, choose Billing > Renewal to enter the Billing Center. On the Renewals page, locate the target instance and click More > Cancel Change to Pay-per-Use.
- Step 8 In the displayed dialog box, click Yes.

----End

4.13.4 Unsubscribing from a Yearly/Monthly DB Instance

If you do not need a yearly/monthly instance any longer, unsubscribe from it.

Precautions

- Unsubscribing operations cannot be undone. Exercise caution when performing this operation. To retain data, create a manual backup before unsubscription. For details, see **Creating a Manual Backup**.
- After an unsubscription request is submitted, resources and data will be deleted and cannot be retrieved. Ensure that the manual backup is complete before submitting the unsubscription request.

Unsubscribing from a Single Yearly/Monthly Instance

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance you want to unsubscribe from and choose **More** > **Unsubscribe** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 4-73 Unsubscribing from a yearly/monthly instance

. ℓ _{Re}	eplica set	MongoDB 4.0	Available	0%	0/100GB	-	default	Yearly/Monthly	Renew Ct	hange to Pay-per-Use More ~
										Change Specifications
										Create Backup
										Scale Storage Space
										Add Node
										Restart
										Reset Password
										Unsubscribe

- **Step 4** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.
- **Step 5** On the displayed page, confirm the order to be unsubscribed and select a reason. Then, click **Confirm**.

For details, see Unsubscription Rules.

Step 6 In the displayed dialog box, click Yes.

NOTICE

- 1. After an unsubscription request is submitted, resources and data will be deleted and cannot be retrieved.
- 2. If you want to retain data, complete a manual backup before submitting the unsubscription request.
- **Step 7** View the unsubscription result. After the instance order is successfully unsubscribed, the instance is no longer displayed in the instance list on the **Instances** page.

----End

Unsubscribing from Multiple Yearly/Monthly Instances

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- **Step 3** Choose **Instances** in the navigation pane on the left, select the instances you want to unsubscribe from and click **Unsubscribe** above the instance list.

Figure 4-74 Unsubscribing from multiple yearly/monthly instances

Auto Scale Renew	Change to Yearly/Monthly Ch	ange to Pay-per-Use) (Ur	Upgrade I	Minor Version						
All projects	▼ [Q]			Add filter							× + 🕥 🖸 🕞
Name1D ⊖	DB Instance.	. Compatible	Stor	Status 🖯	Specifications	Storage Spa	ce .	Load balan	Enterprise	Billing Mode	Operation
•	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0		Available		0%	0/100GB		default	Yearly/Monthly	Renew Change to Pay-per-Use. More ~
2	Replica set	MongoDB 4.0		 Available 		0%	0/1003B	-	default	Yearly/Monthly	Renew Change to Pay-per-Use. More \vee

- Step 4 In the displayed dialog box, click Yes.
- **Step 5** On the displayed page, confirm the order to be unsubscribed and select a reason. Then, click **Confirm**.

For details, see Unsubscription Rules.

Step 6 In the displayed dialog box, click Yes.

NOTICE

- 1. After an unsubscription request is submitted, resources and data will be deleted and cannot be retrieved.
- 2. If you want to retain data, complete a manual backup before submitting the unsubscription request.
- **Step 7** View the unsubscription result. After the instance order is successfully unsubscribed, the instance is no longer displayed in the instance list on the **Instances** page.

----End

4.14 Quotas

Scenarios

Quotas are enforced for service resources on the platform to prevent unforeseen spikes in resource usage. Quotas limit the number or amount of resources available to users, for example, the maximum number of GeminiDB instances that you can create.

If a quota cannot meet your needs, apply for a higher quota.

Viewing Quotas

Step 1 Log in to the management console.

- **Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **GeminiDB Redis API**.
- **Step 3** Click 💿 in the upper left corner and select a region and project.
- **Step 4** In the upper right corner, choose **Resources** > **My Quotas**.

The **Quota** page is displayed.

Figure 4-75 My quotas

Resources	>	My Resources
Billing		My Quotas
Enterprise		Open Beta Tests
Tools		My KooGallery

Step 5 On the **Quotas** page, view the used and total quotas of each type of GeminiDB resources.

----End

Increasing Quotas

- Step 1 Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Redis API.
- **Step 3** Click 💿 in the upper left corner and select a region and project.
- **Step 4** In the upper right corner, choose **Resources** > **My Quotas**.
- **Step 5** In the upper right corner of the page, click **Increase Quota**.

Figure 4-76 Increasing quotas

-		•		
My Quotas				
	Quetes @			
Quotas	Quotas			Increase Quata

Step 6 On the **Create Service Ticket** page, configure parameters as required.

In the **Problem Description** area, enter the required quota and reason for the quota adjustment.

Step 7 After all necessary parameters are configured, select the agreement and click **Submit**.

----End

5 Best Practices

5.1 Buying and Connecting to a GeminiDB Mongo Instance

This section describes how to buy a GeminiDB Mongo instance and uses a Linux ECS as an example to describe how to connect to the instance over a private network.

- Step 1: Buy a GeminiDB Mongo Instance
- Step 2: Buy an Instance
- Step 3: Connect to the GeminiDB Mongo Instance

Step 1: Buy a GeminiDB Mongo Instance

- Step 1 Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Databases > GeminiDB Mongo API.
- Step 3 On the Instances page, click Buy DB Instance.
- **Step 4** Click **Buy DB Instance**, select a billing mode, and configure instance parameters. Then, click **Next** and complete subsequent operations.

Billing Mode	Yearly/Monthly	Pay-per-use				
Region	•	~				
	Regions are geographic a	reas isolated from each o	ther. For low network la	tency and quick resourc	e access, select the neare	st region.
DB Instance Name	geminidb-6178	0				
Original and the second	De de	0	Duranae	110	1-8DD	HDP
Compatible API	Realis	Cassandra	DynamoDB	nbase	InfluxDB	MongoDB
DD instance Type	You can buy 96 more Mon	goDB instances that are o	compatible with the Mor	igoDB database.		
DB Engine Version	4.0	3.4				
CPU Type	×86	Kunpeng				
AZ	az4,az2,az3	az2	az3			
	Three-AZ deployment is re	commended to provide c	ross-AZ DR and ensure	RPO is 0.		

Figure 5-1 Basic information

Figure 5-2 Selecting specifications

Instance Specifications	Flavor Na	ame			vCPU Memory					
	 geminidb. 	mongodb.repset.large.4		2 vCPUs 8 GB						
	geminidb	mongodb.repset.xlarge.4			4 vCPUs 16 GB					
	geminidb.mongodb.repset.2xlarge.4									
	geminidb	mongodb.repset.4xlarge.4			16 vCPUs 64 GB					
Storage Space	Currently selected	geminidb.mongodb.repset.larg	s.4 2 vCPUs 8 GB							
	100	240	360	480	- 100 + GB					

Figure 5-3 Setting a password

Administrator	rwuser
Administrator Password	Keep your password secure. The system cannot retrieve your password.
Confirm Password	Ø
Parameter Template	Default-NoSQL-MongoDB-4.0-ReplicaSet
Enterprise Project	-Select- V C View Project Management ③
SSL	 ⑦ ▲ To encrypt transmission, enable SSL.
Tags	It is recommended that you use TMS's predefined tag function to add the same tags to different cloud resources. View predefined tags C Enter a tag key
	You can add 20 more tags.
Quantity	- 1 + 🧿 You can buy 96 more MongoDB instances that are compatible with the MongoDB database.

Step 5 View the purchased GeminiDB Mongo instance.

Figure 5-4 Successful purchase



----End

Step 2: Buy an Instance

- Step 1 Log in to the management console.
- Step 2 In the service list, choose Compute > Elastic Cloud Server. On the Elastic Cloud Server console, click Buy ECS.
- **Step 3** Configure basic settings and click **Next: Configure Network**. Make sure that the ECS is in the same region, AZ, VPC, and security group as the GeminiDB Mongo instance you created.

Figure 5-5 Basic settings



Figure 5-6 Selecting specifications

Instance Selection	By Type By Scenario								
		_							
CPU Architecture	x86 Kunpeng	0							
Specifications	Latest generation	vCPUs -Select vCPUs-	▼ Memory -S	ielect Memory	Flavor Name	Q 🗌 H	ide sold-out specifications		
	General computing-plus	General computing M	lemory-optimized La	irge-memory Disk-in	tensive Ultra-high I/	O GPU-accelerated	Al-accelerated (?)		
	Select All c7	c6s c6 c6h	¢3						
	Collapse Help ^								
	General computing-plus ECSs u	e dedicated vCPUs and next-generation	on network acceleration engine	as to provide powerful compute	and network performance.				
	EC \$ Type	Flavor Name	vCPUs ↓≣	Memory ↓≣	Cb∩ 1≣	Assured / Maximum Bandwidth JE	Packets Per Second ⑦ J≣	IPv6	Estimated Price ⑦ ↓≣
	 General computing-plus of 	7 c7.large.2	2 vCPUs	4 GIB	Intel Ice Lake	Max 4 Gbit/s	400,000 PPS	Yes	
	General computing-plus of	7 c7.large.4	2 vCPUs	8 GIB	Intel Ice Lake	Max 4 Gbit/s	400,000 PPS	Yes	
	General computing-plus of	7 c7.xlarge.2	4 vCPUs	8 GIB	Intel Ice Lake	Max 8 Gbit/s	800,000 PPS	Yes	
	General computing-plus of	7 c7.xlarge.4	4 vCPUs	16 GiB	Intel Ice Lake	Max 8 Gbit/s	800,000 PPS	Yes	
	General computing-plus of	7 c7.2xlarge.2	8 vCPUs	16 GiB	Intel Ice Lake	Max 15 Gbit/s	1,500,000 PPS	Yes	
	General computing-plus of	7 c7.2xlarge.4	8 vCPUs	32 GIB	Intel Ice Lake	Max 15 Gbit/s	1,500,000 PPS	Yes	
	General computing-plus c	7 c7.3xlarge.2	12 vCPUs	24 GIB	Intel Ice Lake	Max 17 Gbit/s	2,000,000 PPS	Yes	
	Selected specifications	General computing-plus c7.large.	2 2 vCPUs 4 GiB						
		The specifications you selected only s	upport SCSI disks, and the dis	ks will use WWN identifiers.					

Figure 5-7 Selecting an image

Image	Public image Private image Shared image Marketplace image
Protection	CentOS CentOS 8.0 64bit(40 GiB) CentOS 8 reached End of Life on December 31, 2021. Select an alternative solution. HSS basic edition (free) Advanced HSS edition (paid) (17% discount for a yearly package) None
System Disk	General Purpose SSD • GiB IOPS limit: 2,280, IOPS burst limit: 8,000 Show • Enabled SCSI
	Add Data Disk You can attach 23 more disks.
	Yearly/monthly data disks cannot be unsubscribed or renewed separately. Data disks added to a Linux ECS can be initialized using a wizard script

- **Step 4** Configure the ECS network and click **Next: Configure Advanced Settings**. Make sure that the ECS is in the same VPC and security group as the GeminiDB Mongo instance.
 - If security group rules allow access from the ECS, you can connect to the instance using the ECS.
 - If the security group rules do not allow access from the ECS, add an inbound rule to the security group.

Figure 5-8 Network settings

Configure Basic Settings -	Configure Network	- (3) Configure Advanced S	tettings — ④ Con	firm									
Network	Select VPC Create VPC	• C -Select subnet-	•	C ()									
Extension NIC	O Add NC NC3 you can still add: 1												
Security Group	setual(the/123/648-4691-4906-4900/thd6Her2) ① C Create Security Once ⑦ Similar to a ferenut, a security group logicity control reterior access. Ensure that setucited security group logicity control reterior access. Ensure that the setucited security group logicity control reterior access. Ensure that the setucited security group logicity control reterior access. Ensure that the setucited security group logicity control reterior access. Ensure that the setucited security group logicity control reterior access. Ensure that the setucity group logicity control reterior access. Ensure that the setucited security group logicity control reterior access. Ensure that the setucity device that the setucity of the setucity												
	Security Group Name	Priority	Action	Protocol & Port (?)	Туре	Source (?)	Description						
		1	Permit	TCP: 3389	IPv4	0.0.0.00	Permit default Windows remote desktop port.						
		1	Permit	TCP: 22	IPv4	0.0.0.0/0	Permit default Linux SSH port.						
	default	12	Permit	TCP: 3	IPv4	0.0.0.0/0	**						
		100	Permit	AI	IPv4	default							
		100	Permit	AL	IPv6	default	-						

Figure 5-9 Selecting an EIP

EIP	Auto assign Use exis	sting ONot required	
EIP Type	Dynamic BGP	Static BGP	
	Greater than or equal to 99.9	5% service availability rate	
Billed By	Bandwidth 🍁 For heavy/stable traffic	Traffic For light/sharply fluctuating	traffic Shared bandwidth For staggered peak hours
	Billed based on total traffic irresp	ective of usage duration; configurable m	naximum bandwidth size.
Bandwidth Size	5 10	20 50 100	Custom - 1 + The bandwidth can be from 1 to 300 Mbit/s.
	Server Anti-DDoS protection		
Release Option	Release with ECS (?)		

Step 5 Configure a password for the ECS and click **Next: Confirm**.

Figure 5-10 Advanced settings Configure Basic Settings
 2 Configure Network Allow duplicate name ECS Name If you are creating multiple ECSs at the same time, automatic naming and customizable naming are available for you to select. Password Key pair Set password later Login Mode Username root Keep the password secure. If you forget the password, you can log in to the ECS console and change it. Password ----ю, Confirm Password ••••• 2 Cloud Backup and To use CBR, you need to purchase a backup vault. A vault is a container that stores backups for servers. Recovery Create new Use existing Not required 🥥 Cloud Eye Enable Detailed Monitoring Free (?) Senable 1-minute fined-grained monitoring of ECS metrics, such as CPU, memory, network, disk, and process. ECS Group (Optional) Anti-affinity (?) • C Create ECS Group

Step 6 Confirm the configurations and click **Submit**.

Figure 5-11 Confirming the configurations

(1) Cont	igure Basic Settings –	Configure	Network ③ Configure Advanced Settings	4) Confirm			
Co	nfiguration	Basic 🖉 Billing Mode Specifications	Payper-use General computing-plus c6.large 2 2 vCPUs 4 GB	Region Image	Rocky Linux 8 4 64bit	AZ System Disk	AZ1 General Purpose SSD, 40 GiB
		Network 🖉 VPC EIP	default_vpc(19 Dynamic BGP	Security Group	default	Primary NIC	defaul
		Advanced 🖉	ecs-152c	Login Mode	Password	ECS Group	-
Ent Qu Agr	erprise Project antity reement	-Select	C Create Enterprise Project Vou can create a maximum of 20 ECSs. Learn how to increase quota. You can create a maximum of 20 ECSs. Learn how to increase quota. You can create a maximum of 20 ECSs. Learn how to increase quota.	D			

Step 7 View the purchased ECS.

----End

Step 3: Connect to the GeminiDB Mongo Instance

Step 1 On the ECS console, log in to the ECS using the remote login option.

Figure 5-12 Remote login



Step 2 Enter the username and password of the ECS.





Step 3 Install the MongoDB client by referring to How Can I Install a MongoDB Client?

Step 4 Connect to the instance in the directory where the MongoDB client is located.

• Connect to a replica set using its connection address (recommended).

GeminiDB Mongo provides a connection address for each instance on the console. The address includes IP addresses of the primary, standby and hidden nodes and their port numbers. Connecting to a replica set with this method allows access to the primary, standby, and hidden nodes at the same time, so write errors can be avoided after a primary/standby switchover.

Command format:

./mongo "<Connection address>"

The following is an example command:

./mongo "mongodb:// rwuser:****@192.168.0.196:8635,192.168.0.67:8635,192.168.0.32:8635/test? authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica"

Parameter	Description
<connectio n address></connectio 	Connection address of the replica set. You can obtain the connection address in either of the following ways:
	In the instance list, locate the replica set and click its name. On the Basic Information page, in the Network Information area, view the connection address beside the Address field.
	Alternatively, click the instance name to go to the Basic Information page. In the navigation pane on the left, choose Connections to obtain the address of the instance.
	 In the preceding command, ***** needs to be replaced with the password of the instance administrator. If the password contains at signs (@),exclamation marks (!), or percent signs (%), replace them with hexadecimal URL codes %40, %21, and %25 respectively.
	For example, if the password is <i>****</i> @% ***!, enter URL code is ****%40%25***%21.
	 replica in replicaSet=replica indicates the name of a replica set. All Huawei Cloud GeminiDB Mongo replica sets are named replica here and cannot be changed.

Table 5-1 Required description

If information similar to the following is displayed, the connection was successful. replica:PRIMARY>

• Connect to a node of the replica set.

You can also access a specified node of the replica set using the node private IP address.

Command format:

```
./mongo --host <DB_HOST> --port <DB_PORT> -u <DB_USER> -p --
authenticationDatabase admin
```

Example:

./mongo --host 192.168.1.6 --port 8635 -u rwuser -p -authenticationDatabase admin

Table 5-2	Required	description
-----------	----------	-------------

Parameter	Description
<db_host></db_host>	Private IP address of the primary or standby node of the replica set to be connected.
	 If the primary node is accessed, you can read and write data from and to the replica set.
	 If the standby node is accessed, you can only read data from the replica set.
	You can locate the replica set and click its name to switch to the Basic Information page, and then view the private IP address of the required replica set node in the node list.
	Alternatively, click the instance name to go to the Basic Information page. In the navigation pane on the left, choose Connections and view the private IP address of the node.
<db_port></db_port>	Database port.
<db_user></db_user>	Username of the instance administrator. The default value is rwuser .

Enter the password of the database account if the following information is displayed:

Enter password:

If information similar to the following is displayed, the connection was successful.

Connection results if the primary node is connected:

replica:PRIMARY>

Connection results if the standby node is connected: replica:SECONDARY>

----End

5.2 Connecting to an Instance Using Java

5.2.1 Driver Package and Environment Dependency

GeminiDB Mongo allows you to perform operations using Java. In this way, you can connect to an instance through an SSL connection or an unencrypted connection. The SSL connection encrypts data and is more secure.

SSL is disabled by default for a new GeminiDB Mongo instance. To enable SSL, see **Enabling SSL**.

Installing the Driver

- 1. Click the JAR driver download address to download mongo-javadriver-3.12.9.jar, which provides APIs for accessing GeminiDB Mongo instances.
- 2. To install the driver, see the **official guide**.

Environment

JDK 1.8 must be configured for the client. JDK is cross-platform and supports Windows and Linux.

The following uses Windows as an example to describe how to configure JDK:

- **Step 1** In the DOS window, run **java -version** to check the JDK version. Ensure that the JDK version is 1.8. If JDK is not installed, download the installation package and install it.
- **Step 2** Right-click the **This PC** icon on the desktop of the Windows OS and choose **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
- **Step 3** In the **System** window, click **Advanced system settings** in the navigation tree on the left.
- **Step 4** In the dialog box that is displayed, click **Environment Variables**.
- **Step 5** In the displayed window, set the variables listed in the following table.

Variable	Operation	Value
JAVA_HOME	 If this parameter exists, click Edit. If this parameter does not exist, click New. 	Java installation directory. For example, C:\Program Files\Java \jdk1.8.0_131.
Path	Click Edit .	 If JAVA_HOME is configured, add %JAVA_HOME %\bin to the beginning of the variable value. If JAVA_HOME is not configured, add the following Java installation path before the variable value. C:\Program Files\Java \jdk1.8.0_131\bin;
CLASSPATH	Click New.	.;%JAVA_HOME%\lib;%JAVA_HOME% \lib\tools.jar;

Step 6 Click **OK** and close the windows in sequence.

----End

5.2.2 Connecting to a Database

Connecting to an Instance Using an SSL Certificate

Download the SSL certificate and verify the certificate before connecting to an instance.

In the **DB Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click $\stackrel{l}{\rightharpoonup}$ in the **SSL** field to download the root certificate or certificate bundle.

Step 1 Use Java to connect to the MongoDB database.

 Connecting to a replica set mongodb://<username>:<password>@<instance_ip>:<instance_port>/<database_name>? authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica&ssl=true

Parameter	Description
<username></username>	Current username.
<password></password>	Password for the current username.
<instance_ip></instance_ip>	If you access an instance from an ECS, <i>instance_ip</i> is the private IP address of the instance.
	If you access an instance through an EIP, <i>instance_ip</i> is the EIP that has been bound to the instance.
<instance_port></instance_port>	Database port displayed on the Basic Information page. Default value: 8635
<database_name ></database_name 	Name of the database to be connected.
authSource	Authentication user database. The value is admin .
ssl	Connection mode. true indicates that SSL will be used.

Table 5-3 Parameter

Example script in Java:

import java.util.ArrayList; import java.util.List; import org.bson.Document; import com.mongodb.MongoClient; import com.mongodb.MongoCredential; import com.mongodb.ServerAddress; import com.mongodb.client.MongoDatabase; import com.mongodb.client.MongoCollection; import com.mongodb.MongoClientURI; import com.mongodb.MongoClientOptions; public class MongoDBJDBC { public static void main(String[] args){ try { System.setProperty("javax.net.ssl.trustStore", "/home/Mike/jdk1.8.0_112/jre/lib/ security/mongostore");

```
System.setProperty("javax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword", "****");
```



Sample code:

javac -cp .:mongo-java-driver-3.2.0.jar MongoDBJDBC.java java -cp .:mongo-java-driver-3.2.0.jar MongoDBJDBC

----End

Connecting to an Instance Without the SSL Certificate

NOTE

You do not need to download the SSL certificate because certificate verification on the server is not required.

Step 1 Use Java to connect to the MongoDB database.

 Connecting to a replica set mongodb://<username>:<password>@<instance_ip>:<instance_port>/<database_name>? authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica

Table 5-4Parameters

Parameter	Description
<username></username>	Current username.

Parameter	Description
<password></password>	Password for the current username.
<instance_ip></instance_ip>	If you access an instance from an ECS, <i>instance_ip</i> is the private IP address of the instance.
	If you access an instance through an EIP, <i>instance_ip</i> is the EIP that has been bound to the instance.
<instance_port></instance_port>	Database port displayed on the Basic Information page. Default value: 8635
<database_name ></database_name 	Name of the database to be connected.
authSource	Authentication user database. The value is admin .

Example script in Java:

```
import com.mongodb.ConnectionString;
import com.mongodb.reactivestreams.client.MongoClients;
import com.mongodb.reactivestreams.client.MongoClient;
import com.mongodb.reactivestreams.client.MongoDatabase;
import com.mongodb.MongoClientSettings;
public class MyConnTest {
  final public static void main(String[] args) {
  try {
     // no ssl
  ConnectionString connString = new ConnectionString("mongodb://
rwuser:****@192.*.*.*:8635,192.*.*.*:8635/test? authSource=admin");
  MongoClientSettings settings = MongoClientSettings.builder()
     .applyConnectionString(connString)
     .retryWrites(true)
     .build();
  MongoClient mongoClient = MongoClients.create(settings);
  MongoDatabase database = mongoClient.getDatabase("test");
   System.out.println("Connect to database successfully");
  } catch (Exception e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
        System.out.println("Test failed");
     }
}
```

----End

Connecting to an Instance Using YML file

Step 1 Use YML file to connect to the MongoDB database.

```
Connecting to a replica set
spring:
data:
mongodb:
uri: mongodb://<username>:<password>@<instance_ip>:<instance_port>/<database_name>?
authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica
```

Table 5-5 Parameters

Parameter	Description
<username></username>	Current username.
<password></password>	Password for the current username.
<instance_ip></instance_ip>	If you access an instance from an ECS, <i>instance_ip</i> is the private IP address of the instance.
	If you access an instance through an EIP, <i>instance_ip</i> is the EIP that has been bound to the instance.
<instance_port></instance_port>	Database port displayed on the Basic Information page. Default value: 8635
<database_name ></database_name 	Name of the database to be connected.
authSource	Authentication user database. The value is admin .

Example script using YML file:

_	application vml
	spring: data: mongodb: uri: mongodb:// <username>:<password>@<instance_ip>:<instance_port>/ <database_name>?authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica</database_name></instance_port></instance_ip></password></username>
-	ITestService.java package com.springboot.cli.service; public interface ITestService {
	long doCount(); }
-	TestServiceImpl.java
	<pre>package com.springboot.cli.service.impl; import com.springboot.cli.service.ITestService; import lombok.RequiredArgsConstructor; import org.springframework.data.mongodb.core.MongoTemplate; import org.springframework.stereotype.Service; @Service @RequiredArgsConstructor public class TestServiceImpl implements ITestService { private final MongoTemplate mongoTemplate; @Override public long doCount() { return mongoTemplate.estimatedCount("coll"); } </pre>
_	} MongodhApplicationTests java
-	package com.springboot.cli; import com.springboot.cli.service.impl.TestServiceImpl; import org.junit.jupiter.api.Test; import org.springframework.beans.factory.annotation.Autowired; import org.springframework.boot.test.context.SpringBootTest; import org.springframework.stereotype.Service; @SpringBootTest

```
@Service
class MongodbApplicationTests {
    @Autowired
    TestServiceImpl testService;
    @Test
    void doCount() {
        System.out.println("coll count is: " + testService.doCount());
    }
}
```

----End

5.2.3 Accessing a Database

Before accessing a database, import the following classes:

import com.mongodb.client.MongoClients; import com.mongodb.client.MongoClient; import com.mongodb.client.MongoCollection; import com.mongodb.client.MongoDatabase; import static com.mongodb.client.model.Filters.*; import com.mongodb.client.model.CreateCollectionOptions; import com.mongodb.client.model.ValidationOptions;

Accessing DataBase

If an initialized MongoClient instance exists, run the following command to access a database:

MongoDatabase database = mongoClient.getDatabase("test");

Assessing a Collection

After obtaining a MongoDatabase instance, run the following command to obtain a collection:

MongoCollection<Document> coll = database.getCollection("testCollection");

Creating a Collection

You can use the createCollection() method to create a collection and specify the attributes of the collection.

database.createCollection("testCollection", new CreateCollectionOptions()..sizeInBytes(200000))

Inserting Data

```
Document doc0 = new Document("name", "zhangsan")
                .append("age", 3)
                .append("sex", "male");
Document doc1 = new Document("name", "LiSi")
                .append("age", 2)
                .append("sex", "female");
Document doc2 = new Document("name", "wangmazi")
                .append("age", 5)
                .append("sex", "male");
List<Document> documents = new ArrayList<Document>();
```

```
documents.add(doc1);
documents.add(doc2);
```

collection.insertMany(documents);

Deleting Data

collection.deleteOne(eq("_id", new ObjectId("00000001")));

Deleting a Table

```
MongoCollection<Document> collection = database.getCollection("test");
collection.drop()
```

Reading Data

```
MongoCollection<Document> collection = database.getCollection("contacts");
MongoCursor<String> cursor = collection.find();
while (cursor.hasNext()) {
    Object result = cursor.next();
}
```

Query with Filter Criteria

```
MongoCollection<Document> collection = database.getCollection("test");
MongoCursor<String> cursor = collection.find(
    new Document("name","zhangsan")
        .append("age: 5));
while (cursor.hasNext()) {
    Object result = cursor.next();
}
```

Running Commands

Run buildInfo and collStats.

MongoClient mongoClient = MongoClients.create(); MongoDatabase database = mongoClient.getDatabase("test");

Document buildInfoResults = database.runCommand(new Document("buildInfo", 1)); System.out.println(buildInfoResults.toJson());

Document collStatsResults = database.runCommand(new Document("collStats", "restaurants"));
System.out.println(collStatsResults.toJson());

Creating an Index

MongoClient mongoClient = MongoClients.create(); MongoDatabase database = mongoClient.getDatabase("test"); MongoCollection<Document> collection = database.getCollection("test"); collection.createIndex(Indexes.ascending("age"));

5.2.4 Complete Example

package mongodbdemo; import org.bson.*; import com.mongodb.*; import com.mongodb.client.*; public class MongodbDemo { public static void main(String[] args) {

// There will be security risks if the username and password used for authentication are directly written into code. Store the username and password in ciphertext in the configuration file or environment variables. // In this example, the username and password are stored in the environment variables. Before running this example, set environment variables EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV and EXAMPLE_PASSWORD_ENV as needed. String userName = System.getenv("EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV"); String rwuserPassword = System.getenv("EXAMPLE_PASSWORD_ENV"); String mongoUri = "mongodb://" + userName + ":" + rwuserPassword + "@10.66.187.127:27017/admin"; MongoClientURI connStr = new MongoClientURI(mongoUri); MongoClient mongoClient = new MongoClient(connStr); try { //Use the database named someonedb. MongoDatabase database = mongoClient.getDatabase("someonedb"); //Obtain the someonetable handle of the collection/table. MongoCollection<Document> collection = database.getCollection("someonetable"); //Prepare data to be written. Document doc = new Document(); doc.append("key", "value"); doc.append("username", "jack"); doc.append("age", 31); //Write data. collection.insertOne(doc); System.out.println("insert document: " + doc); //Read data. BsonDocument filter = new BsonDocument(); filter.append("username", new BsonString("jack")); MongoCursor<Document> cursor = collection.find(filter).iterator(); while (cursor.hasNext()) { System.out.println("find document: " + cursor.next()); } } finally { //Close the connection. mongoClient.close(); } }

For more information about Java APIs, see the official documents.

5.3 Connecting to an Instance Using Python

5.3.1 PyMongo Package

Python uses PyMongo to provide a unified API for accessing GeminiDB Mongo databases. Applications can perform operations using PyMongo. PyMongo supports SSL connections and uses a connection pool to support multithreaded applications.

To install PyMongo, see the official guide.

5.3.2 Connecting to a Database

If you are connecting to an instance using Python, an SSL certificate is optional, but downloading an SSL certificate and encrypting the connection will improve the security of your instance. SSL is disabled by default for a new GeminiDB Mongo instance. To enable SSL, see **Enabling SSL**.

Prerequisites

1. To connect an ECS to an instance, the ECS must be able to communicate with the GeminiDB Mongo instance. You can run the following command to connect to the IP address and port of the instance server to test the network connectivity.

curl *ip:port*

If the message **It looks like you are trying to access MongoDB over HTTP on the native driver port** is displayed, the ECS and DDS instance can communicate with each other.

- 2. Install Python and third-party installation package **pymongo** on the ECS. PyMongo 3.10 is recommended.
- 3. If SSL is enabled, download the root certificate and upload it to the ECS.

Connection Code

•	Enabling SSL
	import ssl import os
	from pymonao import MonaoClient
	# There will be security risks if the username and password used for authentication are directly written into code. Store the username and password in ciphertext in the configuration file or environment variables
	# In this example, the username and password are stored in the environment variables. Before running this example, set environment variables EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV and
	rwuser = os.getenv('EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV')
	conn_urls="mongodb://%s:%s@ip:port/{mydb}?authSource=admin"
	password),connectTimeoutMS=5000,ssl=True, ssl_cert_reqs=ssl.CERT_REQUIRED,ssl_match_hostname=False,ssl_ca_certs=\${path to
	certificate authority file}) dbs = connection.database_names() print "connect database success! database names is 0(s" 0(dbs
_	Disabling SSI
•	import ssl
	import os
	from pymongo import MongoClient
	# There will be security risks if the username and password used for authentication are directly written into code. Store the username and password in ciphertext in the configuration file or environment variables.
	# In this example, the username and password are stored in the environment variables. Before running this example, set environment variables EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV and EXAMPLE PASSWORD ENV as needed.
	rwuser = os.getenv('EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV') password = os.getenv('EXAMPLE_PASSWORD_ENV')
	conn_urls="mongodb://%s:%s@ip:port/{mydb}?authSource=admin" connection = MongoClient(conn_urls % (rwuser, password),connectTimeoutMS=5000) dbs = connection.database_names() print "connect_database_success! database_names is %s" % dbs
	print connect database success! database names is %s % dbs

NOTE

The authentication database in the URL must be **admin**. Set **authSource** to **admin**.

5.3.3 Accessing a Database

Assume that the client application has connected to the database and a MongoClient client is initialized.

Accessing DataBase

If an initialized MongoClient instance exists, run the following command to access a database:

db=client.test_database

Alternatively, use the following method:

db=client["test_database"]

Assessing a Collection

collection=db.test_collection

Alternatively, use the following method:

collection=db["test_collection"]

Creating a Collection

You can use the createCollection() method to create a collection and specify the attributes of the collection.

collection = db.create_collection("test")

Inserting Data

```
student = {
    'id': '20170101',
    'name': 'Jordan',
    'age': 20,
    'gender': 'male'
}
result = collection.insert(student);
```

Deleting Data

result = collection.delete_one({'name': 'Kevin'})

Deleting a Table

db.drop_collection("test")

Reading Data

result = collection.find_one({'name': 'Mike'})

Query with Filter Criteria

result = collection.find_one({"author":"Mike"}

Running Commands

Run buildInfo and collStats.

db.command("collstats","test") db.command("buildinfo")

Counting

count = collection.find().count()db.command("buildinfo")

Sorting

results = collection.find().sort('name', pymongo.ASCENDING) print([result['name'] for result in results])

Creating an Index

result=db.profiles.create_index([('user_id',pymongo.ASCENDING)],... unique=True)

5.3.4 Complete Example

#!/usr/bin/python import pymongo import random import os # There will be security risks if the username and password used for authentication are directly written into code. Store the username and password in ciphertext in the configuration file or environment variables. # In this example, the username and password are stored in the environment variables. Before running this example, set environment variables EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV and EXAMPLE_PASSWORD_ENV as needed. username = os.getenv('EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV') password = os.getenv('EXAMPLE_PASSWORD_ENV') mongodbUri = 'mongodb://%s:%s@10.66.187.127:27017/admin' client = pymongo.MongoClient(mongodbUri % (username, password)) db = client.somedb db.user.drop() element_num=10 for id in range(element_num): name = random.choice(['R9','cat','owen','lee','J']) sex = random.choice(['male','female']) db.user.insert_one({'id':id, 'name':name, 'sex':sex}) content = db.user.find()for i in content: print i

For more information about PyMongo APIs, see the official document.

5.4 Connecting to an Instance Using Golang

5.4.1 Driver Package

GeminiDB Mongo allows you to operate data using Go. You can connect to an instance through an SSL connection or an unencrypted connection. SSL connection is more secure.

SSL is disabled by default for a new GeminiDB Mongo instance. To enable SSL, see **Enabling SSL**.

Downloading the Driver

To download the driver, go.mod is recommended.

require go.mongodb.org/mongo-driver v1.7.6

Import the go files.

```
import (
"go.mongodb.org/mongo-driver/bson"
"go.mongodb.org/mongo-driver/mongo"
"go.mongodb.org/mongo-driver/mongo/options"
"go.mongodb.org/mongo-driver/mongo/readpref"
```

5.4.2 Connecting to a Database

Prerequisites

1. To connect an ECS to an instance, the ECS must be able to communicate with the GeminiDB Mongo instance. You can run the following command to connect to the IP address and port of the instance server to test the network connectivity.

curl *ip*:*port*

If the message **It looks like you are trying to access MongoDB over HTTP on the native driver port** is displayed, the ECS and GeminiDB Mongo instance can communicate with each other.

2. If SSL is enabled, download the root certificate and upload it to the ECS.

Connection Code

```
Enabling SSL
//Construct an authentication credential.
// There will be security risks if the username and password used for authentication are directly
written into code. Store the username and password in ciphertext in the configuration file or
environment variables.
// In this example, the username and password are stored in the environment variables. Before
running this example, set environment variables EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV and
EXAMPLE PASSWORD ENV as needed.
username = System.getenv("EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV")
password = System.getenv("EXAMPLE_PASSWORD_ENV")
credential := options.Credential{
 AuthMechanism: "SCRAM-SHA-1",
 AuthSource: "admin",
 Username:
               username,
 Password:
              password,
//HA URI. Note that SetDirect is set to false.
highProxyUri := "mongodb://host1:8635,host2:8635/?ssl=true"
clientOpts := options.Client().ApplyURI(highProxyUri)
clientOpts = clientOpts.SetTLSConfig(&tls.Config {
InsecureSkipVerify: true,
}).SetDirect(false).SetAuth(credential)
//URI of the direct connection. Note that SetDirect is set to true.
//directUri := "mongodb://host:8635/?ssl=true"
//clientOpts := options.Client().ApplyURI(highProxyUri)
//clientOpts = clientOpts.SetTLSConfig(&tls.Config {
// InsecureSkipVerify: true,
```
```
//}).SetDirect(true).SetAuth(credential)
// Connect to an instance.
ctx, cancel := context.WithTimeout(context.Background(), 5*time.Second)
defer cancel()
client, err := mongo.Connect(ctx, clientOpts)
if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Failed to connect to the mongo instance:", err)
  return
//Ping the primary node.
ctx, cancel = context.WithTimeout(context.Background(), 2*time.Second)
defer cancel()err = client.Ping(ctx, readpref.Primary())
if err != nil {fmt.Println ("Failed to ping the primary node: ",err)
  return
//Select a database and collection.
collection := client.Database("test").Collection("numbers")
//Insert a record.
ctx, cancel = context.WithTimeout(context.Background(), 5*time.Second)
defer cancel()
oneRes, err := collection.InsertOne(ctx, bson.D{{"name", "e"}, {"value", 2.718}})
if err != nil{fmt.Println("Failed to insert a record: ",err)
 return
}else {
 fmt.Println(oneRes)
Import {0} records in batches.
ctx, cancel = context.WithTimeout(context.Background(), 100*time.Second)
defer cancel()
docs := make([]interface{}, 100)
for i := 0; i < 100; i++{
  docs[i] = bson.D{{"name", "name"+strconv.Itoa(i)}, {"value", i}}
manyRes, err := collection.InsertMany(ctx, docs)
if err != nil {
 fmt.Println("Batch insertion failed: ",err)
 return
}else {
 fmt.Println(manyRes)
}
```

```
Disabling SSL
```

//HA connection. The value of readPreference is primary (by default), indicating that the primary node is read-only. The value primaryPreferred indicates that the primary node is preferred. If the primary node is unavailable, the secondary node is read.

```
// Secondary: read-only node. If the secondary node is unavailable, an error is reported.
secondaryPreferred: The secondary node is preferred. If the secondary node is unavailable, the
primary node is read.
```

// There will be security risks if the username and password used for authentication are directly written into code. Store the username and password in ciphertext in the configuration file or environment variables.

// In this example, the username and password are stored in the environment variables. Before running this example, set environment variables EXAMPLE USERNAME ENV and EXAMPLE_PASSWORD_ENV as needed.

```
username = System.getenv("EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV")
```

```
password = System.getenv("EXAMPLE_PASSWORD_ENV")
```

highProxyUri := fmt.Sprintf("mongodb://%v:%v@host1:8635,host2:8635/?

authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica&readPreference=secondaryPreferred", username, password) ctx, cancel := context.WithTimeout(context.Background(), 10*time.Second)

defer cancel()

clientOpts := options.Client().ApplyURI(highProxyUri)

client, err := mongo.Connect(ctx, clientOpts)

//Ping the primary node.

ctx, cancel = context.WithTimeout(context.Background(), 2*time.Second)

defer cancel()err = client.Ping(ctx, readpref.Primary())

```
if err != nil {
```

fmt.Println("Failed to ping the primary node: ",err) return

//Select a database and collection.

```
collection := client.Database("test").Collection("numbers")
//Insert a record.
ctx, cancel = context.WithTimeout(context.Background(), 5*time.Second)
defer cancel()
res, err := collection.InsertOne(ctx, bson.D{{"name", "e"}, {"value", 2.718}})
if err != nil{
    fmt.Println("Failed to insert a record: ",err)
    return
}else {
    fmt.Println(res)
}
```

5.4.3 Accessing a Database

Accessing a Database

If there is an initialized MongoClient instance, run the following command to access a database:

db:= client.Database("test")

Assessing a Collection

After obtaining a MongoDatabase instance, run the following command to obtain a collection:

```
coll := db.Collection("testCollection")
```

Creating a Collection

You can use the CreateCollection() method to create a collection and specify the attributes of the collection during its creation.

```
db:= client.Database("test")
ctx, cancel = context.WithTimeout(context.Background(), 5*time.Second)
defer cancel()
sizeInBytes := int64(200000)
testCollection := db.CreateCollection(ctx,"testCollection",&options.CreateCollectionOptions{SizeInBytes:
&sizeInBytes})
```

5.4.4 Complete Example

```
import (
"context"
"crypto/tls"
"fmt"
"strconv"
"time"
"go.mongodb.org/mongo-driver/bson"
"go.mongodb.org/mongo-driver/mongo"
"go.mongodb.org/mongo-driver/mongo/options"
"go.mongodb.org/mongo-driver/mongo/readpref"
func main() {
 //Construct an authentication credential.
  // There will be security risks if the username and password used for authentication are directly written
into code. Store the username and password in ciphertext in the configuration file or environment variables.
  // In this example, the username and password are stored in the environment variables. Before running
this example, set environment variables EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV and EXAMPLE_PASSWORD_ENV as
needed.
  username = System.getenv("EXAMPLE_USERNAME_ENV")
  password = System.getenv("EXAMPLE_PASSWORD_ENV")
```

```
credential := options.Credential{
    AuthMechanism: "SCRAM-SHA-1",
    AuthSource:
                  "admin",
    Username:
                  username,
    Password:
                  password,
 //HA URI. Note that SetDirect is set to false.
  highProxyUri := "mongodb://host1:8635,host2:8635/?ssl=true"
  clientOpts := options.Client().ApplyURI(highProxyUri)
  clientOpts = clientOpts.SetTLSConfig(&tls.Config {
  InsecureSkipVerify: true,
  }).SetDirect(false).SetAuth(credential)
 //URI of the direct connection. Note that SetDirect is set to true.
 //directUri := "mongodb://host:8635/?ssl=true"
 //clientOpts := options.Client().ApplyURI(highProxyUri)
 //clientOpts = clientOpts.SetTLSConfig(&tls.Config {
 // InsecureSkipVerify: true,
 //}).SetDirect(true).SetAuth(credential)
 // Connect to an instance.
  ctx, cancel := context.WithTimeout(context.Background(), 5*time.Second)
  defer cancel()
  client, err := mongo.Connect(ctx, clientOpts)
  if err != nil {
     fmt.Println("Failed to connect to the mongo instance:", err)
     return
 //Ping the primary node.
  ctx, cancel = context.WithTimeout(context.Background(), 2*time.Second)
  defer cancel()err = client.Ping(ctx, readpref.Primary())
  if err != nil {fmt.Println ("Failed to ping the primary node: ",err)
     return
  3
 //Select a database and collection.
  collection := client.Database("test").Collection("numbers")
 //Insert a record.
  ctx, cancel = context.WithTimeout(context.Background(), 5*time.Second)
  defer cancel()
  oneRes, err := collection.InsertOne(ctx, bson.D{{"name", "e"}, {"value", 2.718}})
  if err != nil{fmt.Println("Failed to insert a record: ",err)
    return
  }else {
    fmt.Println(oneRes)
 // Import {0} records.
  ctx, cancel = context.WithTimeout(context.Background(), 100*time.Second)
  defer cancel()
  docs := make([]interface{}, 100)
  for i := 0; i < 100; i++{
   docs[i] = bson.D{{"name", "name"+strconv.Itoa(i)}, {"value", i}}
  }
  manyRes, err := collection.InsertMany(ctx, docs)
  if err != nil {
    fmt.Println("Batch insertion failed: ",err)
    return
  }else {
    fmt.Println(manyRes)
  }
}
```

6 Performance White Paper

6.1 Replica Sets

6.1.1 Test Method

This section describes performance testing of GeminiDB Mongo replica sets (version 4.0), including the test environment, procedure, and results.

Test Environment

- Region: CN-Hong Kong
- AZ: AZ1
- Elastic Cloud Server (ECS): s3.2xlarge.2 flavor with 8 vCPUs, 16 GB of memory, and CentOS 7.5 64-bit image
- Replica set specifications: All specifications described in Table 6-1

Replica Set No.	DB Version	Specifications
Replica set 1	4.0	4 vCPUs 16 GB
Replica set 2	4.0	8 vCPUs 32 GB
Replica set 3	4.0	16 vCPUs 64 GB
Replica set 4	4.0	32 vCPUs 128 GB

 Table 6-1 Replica set specifications

Test Tool

YCSB is an open-source tool for testing performance of databases. In this test, YCSB 0.12.0 is used.

For details on how to use this tool, see **YCSB**.

Test Metrics

Operations per Second (OPS): operations executed by a database per second

Test Procedure

1. Configure the **workload** file.

Set values for fields **readproportion**, **insertproportion**, and **updateproportion** in the **workload** file by referring to **Table 6-2**.

Set a value for field **recordcount** in the **workload** file by referring to **Table** 6-3.

2. Use workload_s1 as an example. Run the following command to prepare test data:

./bin/ycsb load mongodb -s -P workloads/workload_s1 -p mongodb.url=mongodb://\${userName}:\${password}@\${mongodIP}:\$ {port},\${mongodIP}:\${port},\${mongodIP}:\${port}/ycsb? authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica&readPreference=secondary threads \${threadNum} 1>workload_s1_load.result 2> workload_s1_load.log

3. Run the following command to test performance:

./bin/ycsb run mongodb -s -P workloads/workload_s1 -p mongodb.url=mongodb://\${userName}:\${password}@\${mongodIP}:\$ {port},\${mongodIP}:\${port},\${mongodIP}:\${port}/ycsb? authSource=admin&replicaSet=replica&readPreference=secondary threads \${threadNum} -p maxexecutiontime=1800 1>workload s1 run.result 2> workload s1 run.log

NOTE

- **\${mongodIP}** indicates private IP addresses of primary and secondary nodes in the GeminiDB Mongo replica set.
- **\${password}** is the administrator password of the GeminiDB Mongo replica set.
- **\${threadNum}** indicates concurrent threads for running the test. In this test, the number of concurrent threads is 128.

Test Models

Workload model

Table 6-2 Workload models

No.	Workload model
S1	100% insert
S2	90% update, 10% read
\$3	65% read, 25% insert, 10% update
S4	90% read, 5% insert, 5% update
S5	50% update, 50% read
S6	100% read

- Concurrent threads: 128
- Document model

Use the default settings of YCSB: The size of each document is 1 KB, and the default index is _**id**.

• Preset data volume

Two types of preset data volumes were used to test performance of replica sets of each type of specifications.

The following table describes preset data volumes for different replica set specifications.

Replica Set No.	Specification s	Small Data Volume	Large Data Volume
Replica set 1	4 vCPUs 16 GB	Storage space: 10 GB RecordCount: 10000000	Storage space: 100 GB RecordCount: 100000000
Replica set 2	8 vCPUs 32 GB	Storage space: 10 GB RecordCount: 10000000	Storage space: 100 GB RecordCount: 100000000
Replica set 3	16 vCPUs 64 GB	Storage space: 10 GB RecordCount: 10000000	Storage space: 100 GB RecordCount: 100000000
Replica set 4	32 vCPUs 128 GB	Storage space: 10 GB RecordCount: 10000000	Storage space: 100 GB RecordCount: 100000000

Table 6-3 Preset data volumes

• Data consistency model

Weak consistency: If **Write Concern** is set to **{w : 1, j : false}**, a response is returned after data is written to disks on a single node. If the default setting is kept **Write Concern**, data is asynchronously stored on disks.

6.1.2 Test Data

• The OPS of instances with different specifications is tested using different service models and **10 million rows of preset data**. For details, see the content in bold in **Table 6-4**.

121071

Instance Specificati ons	4 vCPUs 16 GB	8 vCPUs 32 GB	16 vCPUs 64 GB	32 vCPUs 128 GB
Service Model S1	35263	69490	75332	92332
Service Model S2	13399	26732	39276	50833
Service Model S3	19959	55442	79135	98611
Service Model S4	23338	75905	89156	101306
Service Model S5	16829	35224	60616	81019

Table 6-4 Test data

***OPS**: indicates the operations executed by a database per second. OPS is short for Operations per Second.

64882

97377

***Service Model No.**: indicates the service model sequence number. For details, see **Table 6-2**.

• For weak consistency, the OPS of replica sets of different specifications can be tested using different service models and **100 million rows of preset data**. For details, see numbers in bold in **Table 6-5**.

Table 6-5 Test data

Service

Model S6 29286

Instance Specificati ons	4 vCPUs 16 GB	8 vCPUs 32 GB	16 vCPUs 64 GB	32 vCPUs 128 GB
Service Model S1	18448	27976	33296	51920

Service Model S2	9004	14565	19961	26589
Service Model S3	15431	27476	32161	50332
Service Model S4	14926	25745	33258	48924
Service Model S5	11541	14272	17733	23160
Service Model S6	15637	17452	27827	49384

***OPS**: indicates the operations executed by a database per second. OPS is short for Operations per Second.

***Service Model No.**: indicates the service model sequence number. For details, see **Table 6-2**.

7_{FAQs}

7.1 Product Consulting

7.1.1 What Should I Pay Attention to When Using GeminiDB Mongo API?

- 1. DB instance operating systems (OSs) are invisible to you. Your applications can access a database only through an IP address and a port.
- 2. The backup files stored in OBS and the system containers used by GeminiDB API are invisible to you. They are visible only in the background GeminiDB Mongo API management system.
- 3. Precautions after purchasing DB instances:

After purchasing DB instances, you do not need to perform basic database O&M operations, such as applying HA and security patches, but you should still note:

- a. The CPU, input/output operations per second (IOPS), and space are insufficient for the DB instances.
- b. The DB instance has performance problems and whether optimization is required.

7.1.2 What Is the Availability of GeminiDB Mongo Instances?

The formula for calculating the instance availability is as follows:

Instance availability = (1 – Failure duration/Total service duration) × 100%

The failure duration refers to the total duration of faults that occur during the running of an instance after you buy the instance. The total service duration refers to the total running time of the instance.

7.2 Permissions

7.2.1 How Do I Create a Read-only User for My GeminiDB Mongo Instance?

This section describes how to create a read-only user for a GeminiDB Mongo instance.

Step 1: Create a User Group and Grant Permissions

A user group is a collection of users. With IAM, you can create users, add them to a specific user group, and grant permissions to the user group. Then all users in the group inherit the permissions from the group. To create a user group and assign the permission to it, perform the following steps:

- Step 1 Log in to Huawei Cloud using your HUAWEI ID.
- **Step 2** On the management console, click the username in the upper right corner and then choose **Identity and Access Management**.



Figure 7-1 Choosing IAM

Step 3 On the IAM console, choose User Groups in the navigation pane. Then click Create User Group.

Figure 7-2 Creating a user group

IAM	User Groups ③			Create User Group
Users	Delete User groups available for creation: 15			Enter a group name. Q
User Groups	Name ↓≣	Users Description ↓≣	Created 4F	Operation
Permissions •	□ v test_01	0 –	Jun 26, 2023 18:06:22 GMT+08:00	Authorize Modify Manage User Delete
Anencies	v test01	0 -	Jun 27, 2022 11:19:01 GMT+08:00	Authorize Modify Manage User Delete
Identity Providers	group_suzy	0 –	Jun 02, 2022 01:13:25 GMT+08:00	Authorize Modify Manage User Delete
Security Settings	🗌 🗸 test	0 -	May 11, 2022 06:57:49 GMT+08:00	Authorize Modity Manage User Delete

Step 4 In the **Create User Group** dialog box, enter a user group name, for example, **test_01**, and click **OK**.

After the user group is created, you are redirected to the user group list page. The created user group is displayed in the list.

Figure 7-3 User group you created

Name ↓Ξ	Users	Description JE	Created 4F	Operation
 test_01	0		Jun 26, 2023 18:06:22 GMT+08:00	Authorize Modify Manage User Delete

Step 5 On the **User Groups** page, select the target group, and click **Authorize** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 7-4 Authorization

	Name JΞ	Users	Description ↓Ξ	Created .↓₽	Operation
□ ~	test_01	0	-	Jun 26, 2023 18:06:22 GMT+08:00	Authorize Modify Manage User Delete

Step 6 Authorize the user group.

1. Select **Distributed Multi-model NoSQL Database Service**, enter **NoSQL** in the text box, and click the search icon.

Figure 7-5 Selecting a service

View Sel	ected (0) Copy Permissions from Another Project	All policies/toles	Distributed Multi-model N Fuzzy search Inter a policy name, role name, or description. Q
	Policy/Role Name		Туре
• •	GeminIDB FutlAccess All permissions for Distributed Multi-Model NoSQL Database Service		System-defined policy
• •	GeminIDB ReadOnlyAccess Read-only access for Distributed Multi-Model NoSOL Database Service		System-defined policy

2. In the permission list, select GeminiDB ReadOnlyAccess and click OK.

Figure 7-6 Authorization

Vie	ew Selected (1) Copy Permissions from Another Project	All policies/roles	Distributed Multi-model N Fuzzy search There a policy name, role name, or description. Q
	Policy/Role Name		Туре
	CerriniDB FullAccess All permissions for Distributed Multi-Model NoSQL Database Service		System-defined policy
	GeminIDB ReadOnlyAccess Read-only access for Distributed Multi-Model NoSQL Database Service		System-defined policy

3. Select **Region-specific projects** for **Scope**.

The authorization setting takes effect in only selected regions. If you hope that the setting takes effect in all regions, select **All projects**.



1 The following are recommended scopes for the permissions you selected. Select the desired scope requiring minimum authorization.	
Scope	
All resources	
\bigcirc Enterprise projects $_{\textcircled{O}}$	
Region-specific projects	
The selected permissions will be applied to resources in the region-specific projects you select.	
Total projects: 16. Select the desired projects.	
Project [Region] ↓=	Description
cn-north-4 [CN North-Beijing4]	
cn-north-9 [CN North-Ulanqab1]	-
cn-east-3 [CN East-Shanghai1]	

4. After the authorization is successful, choose **Permissions** > **Authorization** to view authorization records of the user group.

Figure 7-8 Viewing permissions

Policy/Role	Policy/Role Description	Project [Region]	Principal	Principal Description	Principal Type	Operation
GeminiDB ReadOnlyAccess	Read-only access for Distributed	All resources [Existing and futur	test_01 🗸	-	User Group	Delete

----End

Step 2: Create an IAM User

IAM users can be created for employees or applications of an enterprise. Each IAM user has their own security credentials, and inherits permissions from the groups it is a member of. To create an IAM user, perform the following steps:

- **Step 1** On the IAM console, choose **Users** in the navigation pane. Then click **Create User**.
- **Step 2** Specify user information on the **Create User** page. To create more users, click **Add User**. You can add a maximum of 10 users at a time.

		oble number can be used as login credentials.							
	* Username	Email Address	Mobile Number	Description	External Identity ID	Opera			
	Enter a username.	Enter an email address.	+86 (Chinese • Enter a mobile number.	Enter a brief description.	Enter an external identity ID.	Delete			
	Add User Users available for add	dition: 9							
Access Type	Programmatic access Allows access to HUAWEI CLOUI	D services only by using development tools, suc	th as APIs, CLI, and SDKs, and requires an access key or password. Learn I	more					
	Managament console access Allows access in HUMRE ICDUD services only by using the management console and requires a password.								
Credential Type	Cooss key Tou can download the access key after you create the user.								
	Password								
	Cal area								
	Enter a necoward	ei.							
	Automatically generated								
	Apassword will be automatically generated. You can download the password file and provide it to the user.								
	Set by user								
	A one-time login URL will be emailed to the user. The user can then click on the link to set a password.								
	Enable (Recommended)								
Login Protection	 Enable (Recommended) 								

Parame ter	Description
User Details	• Username: Used for logging in to Huawei Cloud. For example, enter James.
	 Email Address: Email address bound to the IAM user. This parameter is mandatory if you choose Credential Type > Password > Require password reset at first login.
	 (Optional) Mobile Number: Mobile number bound to the IAM user.
	(Optional) Description : Description of the user.
	• (Optional) External Identity ID : Identifies an enterprise user in federated login using SSO.
Access Type	 Programmatic access: After creation, you can download access keys of all the users you just created.
	 Management console access: The users you created can use accounts and passwords to log in to the Huawei Cloud console.
Credenti al Type	• Access Key: You can download the access key after you create the user.
	• Password : If you create multiple users at a time, set a password for each user and determine whether to require the users to reset passwords at first login. The Automatically generated option is not supported. If you create only one user, you can select any option of the above.
Login Protecti on	To ensure account security, you are advised to select Enable . To disable this function, see Login Protection .

 Table 7-1
 Configuration items

Step 3 (Optional) Click **Next** and then **OK**.

Figure 7-10 Adding the user to a user group

Livers will automatically inhurt permissions from at the user groups to which you add them. You can also create new groups. Learn more						
Available User Groups (2)	Enter a group name. Q	Selected User Groups (1)	Enter a group name. Q			
User Group Name/Description		User Group Name/Description	Operation			
		test_01 	×			
somn Full permissions						

- Select user group **test_01**. You can add a user to one or more user groups. Then the user will inherit the permissions granted to these user groups. The default user group is **admin**, which has the administrator permissions and all of the permissions required to use all cloud resources.
- You can also create new groups as required.
- If you do not want to grant permissions to the user in this step, you can grant permissions by referring to **Step 5** later.

Step 4 Check the created user in the user list. If Programmatic access is selected, you can download the access key. You can also manage access keys on the My Credentials page.

Figure 7-11	Viewing th	ne creation	results



Step 5 If the new user is not authorized in **Step 3**, perform the following operations to authorize it.

In the user list, locate the created user, click **Authorize** in the **Operation** column, select the user group created in **Step 1: Create a User Group and Grant Permissions**, and click **OK**.

The user will inherit the permissions of the user group. This process is called authorization.

Figure 7-12 Authorization

Username ↓≡	Description ↓=	Status ↓Ξ	Last Activity ↓Ξ	Created JF	Operation
James		Enabled	**	Jun 26, 2023 19:22:13 GMT+08:00	Authorize Modify More 🔻

----End

Step 3: Log In and Verify Permissions

After a user is created, use the user's username and credential to log in to Huawei Cloud, and verify that the user has the permissions defined by the **GeminiDB ReadOnlyAccess** policy. For more login methods, see **Signing In to Huawei Cloud**.

- **Step 1** On the Huawei Cloud login page, click **IAM User**.
- Step 2 Enter the account name, username, and password, and click Log In.
 - The account name is the name of the HUAWEI CLOUD account that created the IAM user.
 - The username and password used here are the ones you enter when you created the IAM user.

If the login fails, contact the entity owning the account to verify the username and password. Alternatively, you can reset the password by referring to **How Do I Reset My Password?**.

Step 3 On the Huawei Cloud console, switch to the region where the user has been granted permissions.

Figure 7-13 Selecting the target region



- Step 4 Choose Service List > GeminiDB Mongo API. Then click Buy DB Instance in the upper right corner. If a message appears indicating insufficient permissions, the GeminiDB ReadOnlyAccess policy has already taken effect.
- **Step 5** Choose any other service in the **Service List**. If a message appears indicating insufficient permissions, the **GeminiDB ReadOnlyAccess** policy has already taken effect.

----End

7.3 Billing

7.3.1 What Are the Differences Between Yearly/Monthly and Pay-per-use Billing Mode?

Yearly/Monthly is a prepaid billing mode in which resources are billed based on the service duration. This cost-effective mode is ideal when the duration of resource usage is predictable. It is recommended for long-term users.

Pay-per-use is a post payment mode, so you can start or stop an instance at any time. Pricing is listed on a per-hour basis, but bills are calculated based on the actual usage duration.

7.3.2 Can I Switch Between Yearly/Monthly and Pay-per-Use Payments?

You can change the billing mode from yearly/monthly to pay-per-use or vice versa.

- If you want to change the billing mode from yearly/monthly to pay-per-use, see Changing the Billing Mode from Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use.
- If you want to change the billing mode from pay-per-use to yearly/monthly, see **Changing the Billing Mode from Pay-per-Use to Yearly/Monthly**.

7.4 Database Usage

7.4.1 How Do I Create a GeminiDB Mongo Session?

GeminiDB Mongo API is a cloud-native NoSQL database compatible with MongoDB. For details about how to create a session on, see **MongoDB official documents**.

7.4.2 Can GeminiDB Mongo API Be Downgraded?

Not supported.

7.4.3 Does GeminiDB Mongo API Support Read-Only Databases?

Not supported.

7.4.4 Does GeminiDB Mongo API Support Oplog Subscription?

Not supported.

7.4.5 How Do I Troubleshoot High CPU Usage of a GeminiDB Mongo Instance?

Analyzing Current Queries

{

- 1. Connect to a GeminiDB Mongo instance using Mongo Shell.
- 2. Run the following command to view operations being performed on the instance:

db.currentOp()

Command output:

```
"raw" : {
     "shard0001" : {
           "inprog" : [
                 {
                      "desc" : "StatisticsCollector",
                      "threadId" : "140323686905600",
                      "active" : true,
                       "opid" : 9037713,
                      "op" : "none",
                      "ns" : ""
                      "query" : {
                      },
                      "numYields" : 0,
                      "locks" : {
                      },
                       "waitingForLock" : false,
                      "lockStats" : {
                      }
                },
                 {
                      "desc" : "conn2607".
                      "threadId" : "140323415066368",
                      "connectionId" : 2607,
                      "client" : "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx"
                      "appName" : "MongoDB Shell",
```

```
"active" : true,
                               "opid" : 9039588,
                               "secs_running": 0,
                               "microsecs_running" : NumberLong(63),
                              "op" : "command",
"ns" : "admin.",
                               "query" : {
                                     "currentOp" : 1
                          },
                               "numYields" : 0,
                               "locks" : {
                              },
                               "waitingForLock" : false,
                               "lockStats" : {
                              }
                        }
                  ],
                  "ok" : 1
           },
}
```

NOTE

- client indicates the IP address of the client that sends the request.
- **opid** indicates the unique operation ID.
- **secs_running** indicates the elapsed time for execution, in seconds. If the returned value of this field is too large, check whether there is something wrong with the request.
- **microsecs_running** indicates the elapsed time for execution, in microseconds. If the returned value of this field is too large, check whether there is something wrong with the request.
- **op** indicates the operation type. The operations can be **query**, **insert**, **update**, **delete**, or **command**.
- **ns** indicates the target collection.
- For details, see the **db.currentOp()** command in the **official document**.
- 3. Based on the command output, check whether there are requests that take prolonged periods to process.

If the CPU usage is low during routine operation but increases during specific operations, analyze the requests that take an overlong time to execute.

If an abnormal query is found, find the **opid** corresponding to the operation and run **db.killOp**(*opid*) to kill it.

Analyzing Slow Queries

Slow query profiling has been enabled for GeminiDB Mongo instances by default. The system automatically records any queries whose execution takes longer than 500 ms to the **system.profile** collection in the corresponding database. You can:

- 1. Connect to a GeminiDB Mongo instance using Mongo Shell.
- 2. Select a specific database (using the **test** database as an example): use test
- 3. Check whether slow SQL queries have been collected in **system.profile**. **show collections**;
 - If the command output includes system.profile, slow SQL queries have been generated. Go to the next step.

```
mongos> show collections
system.profile
test
```

 If the command output does not contain system.profile, no slow SQL queries have been generated, and slow query analysis is not required.

```
mongos> show collections
test
```

4. Check the slow query logs in the database.

db.system.profile.find().pretty()

{

5. Analyze slow query logs to find the cause of the high CPU usage.

The following is an example of a slow query log. The log shows a request that scanned the entire table, including 1,561,632 documents. No indexes are used for query.

```
"op" : "query",
     "ns" : "taiyiDatabase.taiyiTables$10002e",
     "query" : {
           "find" : "taiyiTables",
           "filter" : {
                "filed19" : NumberLong("852605039766")
           },
           "shardVersion" : [
                Timestamp(1, 1048673),
ObjectId("5da43185267ad9c374a72fd5")
           ],
           "chunkld" : "10002e"
     },
"keysExamined" : 0,
     "docsExamined" : 1561632,
     "cursorExhausted" : true,
     "numYield" : 12335,
     "locks" : {
           "Global" : {
                "acquireCount" : {
                      "r" : NumberLong(24672)
                }
          },
"Database" : {
                "acquireCount" : {
                      "r" : NumberLong(12336)
                }
           "Collection" : {
                "acquireCount" : {
                      "r" : NumberLong(12336)
                }
           }
     },
"nreturned" : 0,
     "responseLength" : 157,
     "protocol" : "op_command",
     "millis" : 44480,
     "planSummary" : "COLLSCAN",
     "execStats" : {
         "stage" :
"SHARDING_FILTER",
           [3/1955]
           "nReturned" : 0,
```

```
"executionTimeMillisEstimate": 43701,
     "works" : 1561634,
     "advanced" : 0,
     "needTime" : 1561633,
"needYield" : 0,
     "saveState" : 12335,
     "restoreState" : 12335,
     "isEOF": 1,
     "invalidates" : 0,
     "chunkSkips" : 0,
     "filed19" : {
                      "$eq" : NumberLong("852605039766")
                }
           },
           "nReturned" : 0,
           "executionTimeMillisEstimate" : 43590,
           "works" : 1561634,
           "advanced" : 0,
           "needTime" : 1561633,
           "needYield" : 0,
           "saveState" : 12335
           "restoreState" : 12335,
           "isEOF" : 1,
           "invalidates" : 0,
           "direction" : "forward",
           "docsExamined" : 1561632
     }
},
"ts" : ISODate("2019-10-14T10:49:52.780Z"),
"client" : "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx"
"appName" : "MongoDB Shell",
"allUsers" : [
     {
           "user" : "__system",
           "db" : "local"
     }
"user" : "__system@local"
```

The following stages can be causes for a slow query:

}

- COLLSCAN, involving a full collection (full table) scan

When a request (such as QUERY, UPDATE, and DELETE) requires a full table scan, a large amount of CPU resources are occupied. If you find **COLLSCAN** in the slow query log, CPU resources may be occupied.

If such requests are frequent, create indexes for the fields to be queried.

- **docsExamined**, involving a full collection (full table) scan

You can view the value of **docsExamined** to see how many documents are scanned in a query. A larger value indicates a higher CPU usage.

- IXSCAN and keysExamined scan indexes
 - An excessive number of indexes can affect the write and update performance.
 - If your application has more write operations, creating indexes may increase write latency.

You can view the value of **keyExamined** to see how many indexes are scanned in a query. A larger value indicates a higher CPU usage.

If an index is inappropriate or it has many matching results, the CPU usage does not decrease greatly but the execution is slow.

Example: For the data of a collection, field **a** has few values (only values **1** and **2**), but field **b** has many values.

```
{ a: 1, b: 1 }
{ a: 1, b: 2 }
{ a: 1, b: 3 }
.....
{ a: 1, b: 100000}
{ a: 2, b: 1 }
{ a: 2, b: 2 }
{ a: 2, b: 3 }
.....
{ a: 1, y: 100000}
```

The following shows how to perform the {a: 1, b: 2} query.

db.createIndex({a: 1}): The query is slow because the **a** field has too many same values.

db.createIndex({a: 1, b: 1}): The query is slow because the **a** field has too many same values.

db.createIndex({b: 1}): The query is fast because the **b** field has a few same values.

db.createIndex({b: 1, a: 1}): The query is fast because the **b** field has a few same values. For the differences between {a: 1} and {b: 1, a: 1}, see the **official documents**.

- **SORT** and **hasSortStage**, which may involve sorting a large amount of data.

If the value of the **hasSortStage** parameter in the **system.profile** collection is **true**, the query request involves sorting. If the sorting cannot be implemented through indexes, the query results are sorted, and sorting is a CPU-intensive operation. When this happens, you need to create indexes for the fields that are frequently sorted.

If the **system.profile** collection contains **SORT**, you can use indexing to improve sorting speed.

Other operations, such as index creation and aggregation (combinations of traversal, query, update, and sorting), also apply to the preceding scenarios because they are also CPU-intensive operations. For more information about profiling, see the **official documents**.

Analyzing Service Capabilities

After analyzing and optimizing current requests and slow queries, all requests use appropriate indexes, and the CPU usage becomes stable. If the CPU usage remains high after the preceding troubleshooting operations are performed, the current instance may be experiencing a performance bottleneck and cannot meet workload requirements. To address this issue, do as follows:

- 1. View monitoring information to analyze instance resource usage. For details, see **Viewing Metrics**.
- 2. Change the instance class or add shard nodes. For details, see the following documents based on the instance type.
 - Adding Nodes
 - Changing Specifications of an Instance

7.5 Client Installation

7.5.1 How Can I Install a MongoDB Client?

MongoDB official website provides client installation packages for different OSs. Download the official binary installation package at https://www.mongodb.com/ download-center#community.

The following uses **RedHat/CentOS 7.0** and MongoDB 4.0.27 as examples to describe how to obtain the required installation package and install the MongoDB client. Select a client version based on the OS version of your ECS and the version of your GeminiDB Mongo instance.

Procedure

Step 1 Obtain the installation package.

- 1. Log in to https://www.mongodb.com/download-center#community.
- Select 4.0.27 under Version, RedHat/CentOS 7.0 for Platform, and tgz for Package. Make sure that the platform is consistent with the OS version of your ECS. Figure 7-14 shows an example.

Figure 7-14 MongoDB official web page

MongoDB Enterprise Server	~
MongoDB Community Server	Available Downloads
The Community version of our distributed database offers a flexible document data model along with support for ad-hoc queries, secondary indexing, and real-time aggregations to provide powerful ways to access and analyze your data.	Version 4.0.27 Platform RedHat / CentOS 7.0
The database is also offered as a fully-managed service with MongoDB Atlas. Get access to advanced functionality such as auto- scaling, serverless instances (in preview), full-text search, and data distribution across regions and clouds. Deploy in minutes on AWS, Google Cloud, and/or Azure, with no downloads necessary.	Package tg2 Download Copy Link
Give it a try with a free, highly-available 512 MB cluster.	Current releases & packages Development releases Archived releases Changelog Release Notes

3. Click **Download** to download the binary installation package of version 4.0.27. The name of the installation package is **mongodb-linux-x86_64-rhel70-4.0.27.tgz**.

Step 2 Upload the installation package to the ECS.

You have created and logged in to an ECS. For details, see **Purchasing an ECS** and **Logging In to an ECS**.

Step 3 Decompress the installation package on the ECS.

tar zxvf mongodb-linux-x86_64-rhel70-4.0.27.tgz

Step 4 Obtain the client tool from the bin directory of the installation package.

cd mongodb-linux-x86_64-rhel70-4.0.27/bin

The common tools are as follows:

- MongoDB client mongo
- Data export tool mongoexport
- Data import tool mongoimport
- **Step 5** Before using a client tool, assign the execute permission to it.
 - Run the **chmod** +**x mongo** command to grant a client permission to connect to a DB instance.
 - Run the **chmod +x mongoexport** command to grant a client permission to export data.
 - Run the **chmod +x mongoimport** command to grant a client permission to import data.
- **Step 6** Connect to a DB instance through the installed client.

For details about how to connect to a replica set instance, see **Connecting to a Replica Set Instance over a Private Network**.

When you run the MongoDB client, if an error similar to **Version libcrypto.so.10 not found** is displayed, check whether your client is compatible with the ECS OS.

----End

7.5.2 How Do I Install Robo 3T?

This section describes how to obtain the Robo 3T installation package and install Robo 3T.

Procedure

Step 1 Access the Robo 3T download address https://robomongo.org/download and click Download Robo Only.

Figure 7-15 Downloading page	
Robo 3T	Download Blog (2) Account
Simplicity M	eets Power version of Robo 3T
Robo 3T: the hobbyist GUI Robo 3T 1.4 brings support for MongoDB 4.2, and a mongo shell upgrade from 4.0 to 4.2, with the ability to manually specify visible databases.	 Studio 3T: the professional IDE for MongoDB Preferred by over 100,000 professional developers and DBAs because it saves time. Build queries fast, generate instant code, import/export in multiple formats, and much more Available for Windows, macOS, and Linux. Now with two NEW tools: Data Masking Reschema for performance tuning Download Studio 3T

Step 2 In the dialog box that is displayed, enter required information and click **Download for Windows**.

Figure 7-16 Downloading Robo 3T

Robo 3T 1.4.4 Download for Windows Email* First name* Country code China (+86) Phone number China (+86) Phone number China (+86)	Robo 3T 1.4.4 Download for Windows Email* First name* Country code China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy. Download for Windows		Windows	Mac	Linux	
Download for Windows Email* First name* Country code Phone number China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy.	Download for Windows Email* First name* Last name* Country code Phone number China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy. Download for Windows	Robo 3T 1.4.4				
Email* First name* Last name* Country code Phone number China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy.	Email* First name* Last name* Country code Phone number China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy. Download for Windows	Download for Wind	lows			
First name* Last name* Country code Phone number China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy.	First name* Last name* Country code Phone number China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy. Download for Windows	Email*				
First name* Last name* Country code Phone number China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy.	First name* Last name* Country code Phone number China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy. Download for Windows					
Country code Phone number China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy.	Country code Phone number China (+86) • By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy.	First name*		Last	name*	
Country code Phone number China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy.	Country code Phone number China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy.					
China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy .	China (+86) By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy. Download for Windows	Country code		Phor	ne num	ber
By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy.	By clicking on the download button, I agree to the 3T Software Labs Privacy Policy. Download for Windows	China (+86)				
Download for Windows	boundar for mindons	By clicking on the of Software Labs Priva	download acy Policy. ndows	buttor	n, Lagre	e to the

Step 3 Download robo3t-1.4.4-windows-x86_64-e6ac9ec5.zip.





- **Step 4** Decompress the downloaded package obtained in **Step 3** and double-click the **robo3t.exe** file in the decompressed directory to start the installation.
- **Step 5** After the installation is complete, start the tool.

Figure 7-18 Main window

🛃 MongoDB Connections X					
<u>Create</u> , <u>edit</u> , <u>remove</u> , <u>clone</u>	or reorder connections via	drag' n' drop.			
Name	Address	Attributes Auth. Database / Vser			
		Connect Ca	ancel		



For details on how to connect to a replica set instance, see **Connecting to a Replica Set Instance Using Robo 3T**.

----End

7.6 Database Connection

7.6.1 How Can I Create and Connect to an ECS?

- 1. To create an ECS, see *Elastic Cloud Server User Guide*.
 - The ECS to be created must be in the same VPC with the GeminiDB Mongo instance to which it connects.
 - Configure the security group rules to allow the ECS to access to the instance.
- 2. To connect to an ECS, see "Logging in to an ECS" *Getting Started with Elastic Cloud Server User Guide*.

7.6.2 Can I Change the VPC of a GeminiDB Mongo Instance?

After a GeminiDB Mongo instance is created, the VPC where the instance resides cannot be changed.

However, you can change a VPC by restoring the full backup of your instance to the VPC you want to use. For details, see **Restoring Data to a New or Existing Instance**.

7.7 Backup and Restoration

7.7.1 How Long Does a GeminiDB Mongo Instance Store Backup Data For?

Automated backup data is kept based on the backup retention period you specified. There is no limit for the manual backup retention period. You can delete manual backups as needed.

7.8 Regions and AZs

7.8.1 What Is AZ and How Can I Select an AZ?

AZ

An AZ is a part of a physical region with its own independent power supply and network. An AZ is generally an independent physical equipment room, ensuring independence of the AZ.

Each region contains multiple AZs. If one AZ becomes faulty, the other AZs in the same region can continue to provide services normally.

AZs in the same region can communicate with each other over an intranet.

Selecting an AZ

You can deploy your instances in different AZs for high availability. If one of an AZ becomes faulty, databases in other AZs will not be affected. When selecting AZs:

- If only one AZ is available in a region, there is only one AZ in the region.
- The AZ of a purchased DB instance cannot be changed.
- The AZs in one region can communicate with each other over an intranet.

For more information, see **Regions and AZs**.

7.8.2 Can Different AZs Communicate with Each Other?

An AZ is a part of a physical region with its own independent power supply and network. An AZ is generally an independent physical equipment room, ensuring independence of the AZ.

Each region contains multiple AZs. If one AZ becomes faulty, the other AZs in the same region can continue to provide services normally.

By default, different AZs in the same VPC can communicate with each other through an internal network.

For more information, see Regions and AZs.

7.8.3 Can I Change the Region of a GeminiDB Mongo Instance?

No. After an instance is created, its region cannot be changed.

7.9 Instance Freezing, Release, Deletion, and Unsubscription

Why Are My GeminiDB Mongo Instances Released?

If your subscriptions have expired but not been renewed, or you are in arrears due to insufficient balance, your instances enter a grace period. If you do not renew the subscriptions or top up your account after the grace period expires, your instances will enter a retention period and become unavailable. If you still do not renew them or top up your account after the retention period ends, your instances will be released and your data stored will be deleted. For details, see **Resource Suspension and Release**.

Why Are My GeminiDB Mongo Instances Frozen?

Your instances may be frozen for a variety of reasons. The most common reason is that you are in arrears.

Can I Still Back Up Data If My Instances Are Frozen?

No. If your instances are frozen because your account is in arrears, go to top up your account to unfreeze your instances and then back up instance data.

How Do I Unfreeze My Instances?

If your instances are frozen because your account is in arrears, you can unfreeze them by renewing them or topping up your account. The frozen instances can be renewed, released, or deleted. Yearly/Monthly instances that have expired cannot be unsubscribed from, while those that have not expired can be unsubscribed from.

What Impacts Does Instance Freezing, Unfreezing or Release Have on My Services?

- After an instance is frozen:
 - It cannot be accessed, and your services will be interrupted. For example, if a GeminiDB Mongo instance is frozen, it cannot be connected.
 - No changes can be performed on it if it is a yearly/monthly instance.
 - It can be unsubscribed from or deleted manually.
- After it is unfrozen, you can connect to it again.
- Releasing an instance means deleting it. Before the deletion, GeminiDB Mongo API determines whether to move the instance to the recycle bin based on the recycling policy you specified.

How Do I Renew My Instances?

After a yearly/monthly instance expires, you can renew it on the **Renewals** page. For details, see **Renewal Management**.

Can My Instances Be Recovered After They Are Released or Unsubscribed From?

If your instance is moved to the recycle bin after being deleted, you can recover it from the recycle bin by referring to **Recycling an Instance**. If the recycling policy is not enabled, you cannot recover it.

When you unsubscribe from an instance, confirm the instance information carefully. If you have unsubscribed from an instance by mistake, purchase a new one.

How Do I Delete a GeminiDB Mongo Instance?

- To delete a pay-per-use instance, see **Deleting a Pay-per-Use Instance**.
- To delete a yearly/monthly instance, see Unsubscribing from a Yearly/ Monthly DB Instance.

A Change History

Release Date	Description
2023-08-30	This issue is the twenty-fourth official release. Added Billing .
2023-07-18	This issue is the twenty-third official release. Added Getting Started with Common Practices .
2023-06-30	This issue is the twenty-second official release. Added event monitoring description in Event Monitoring .
2023-04-28	This issue is the twenty-first official release. In Instance Specifications , added the description of instances, each with a vCPUs to memory ratio of 1:8.
2023-03-31	This issue is the twentieth official release. Added Updating the OS of an Instance .
2022-08-11	This issue is the nineteenth official release. Added FAQ Instance Freezing, Release, Deletion, and Unsubscription.
2022-01-27	This issue is the eighteenth official release. Added description of batch operations in Renewing Instances , Changing the Billing Mode from Pay-per- Use to Yearly/Monthly, Changing the Billing Mode from Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use , and Unsubscribing from a Yearly/Monthly DB Instance .
2021-11-30	This issue is the seventeenth official release. Added the description of SSL connections for replica set instances in Buying a Replica Set Instance , Configuring an SSL Connection , and GeminiDB Mongo.

Release Date	Description
2021-06-30	This issue is the sixteenth official release. Adjusted the document structure.
2021-04-30	This issue is the fifteenth official release. Added the minimum storage capacity supported by instances of different specifications in Instance Specifications. Supported one-click alarm reporting in Configuring Alarm Rules.
2021-04-15	This issue is the fourteenth official release. Adjusted the document structure.
2021-01-30	This issue is the thirteenth official release. Supported changing instance class, adding nodes to an instance, and scaling up storage capacity.
2020-12-30	This issue is the twelfth official release. Supported access across CIDR blocks for GeminiDB Mongo replica set instances.
2020-10-30	 This issue is the tenth official release. Supported up to 20 tags per instance. Allowed users to select at least 1 GB each time they scale up. Supported restoring the GeminiDB Mongo instance to an existing instance. Supported scaling down the specifications of GeminiDB Mongo instances. Added restricted commands for GeminiDB Mongo. Supported advanced O&M for GeminiDB Mongo.
2020-09-30	This issue is the ninth official release, which incorporates the following changes: Supported instance quota management. Supported error log for GeminiDB Mongo. Supported parameter template for GeminiDB Mongo.

Release Date	Description
2020-08-30	This issue is the eighth official release.
	Supported the following functions of GeminiDB Mongo:
	 Supported batch purchase of pay-per-use or yearly/ monthly instances.
	• Allowed users to view slow query log details, enable original slow query log, and export log files.
	Supported instance name modifications.
	Supported instance recycle bin.
	• Supported resetting the administrator password for a replica set instance.
	 Supported changing the instance port for a replica set instance.
	• Supported changing the replica set instance security group.
2020-07-30	This issue is the seventh official release.
	Supported the following functions of GeminiDB Mongo:
	 Purchasing yearly/monthly instances
	Renewing yearly/monthly instances
	 Changing the billing mode of instances from pay- per-use to yearly/monthly
	 Changing the billing mode of instances from yearly/ monthly to pay-per-use
	Unsubscribing from yearly/monthly instances
	Scaling up storage space
	Changing instance class
	Binding and unbinding an EIP
	Accessing instances over a public network
	Restarting an instance
	Managing connections
2020-06-30	This issue is the sixth official release.
	Pesetting a password
	 Configuring cross-AZ disaster recovery
2020-04-30	This issue is the fifth official release.
	Added monitoring metrics.
2020-03-13	This issue is the third official release.
	Supported slow query logs.
2019-11-18	This issue is the first official release.